



**Jones Gillam Renz Architects**

---

**Address**

730 N 9th St.  
Salina, KS 67401

1881 Main St., Suite 301  
Kansas City, MO 64108

**Contact**

jgr@jgrarchitects.com  
(785) 827-0386

**Web**

jgrarchitects.com

# Project Manual

for

## ASTRA BANK NEW FACILITY Dodge City, KS

JGR Project No. 25-3515

August 28, 2025



ASTRA BANK  
NEW FACILITY  
DODGE CITY, KANSAS

Project No. 25-3515

DATE OF DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

August 28, 2025

OWNER

ASTRA BANK  
Kyle A. Campbell, President/CEO  
207 Eagle Dr., Abilene KS 67410  
785 263 1112

ARCHITECT

JONES GILLAM RENZ ARCHITECTS INC  
Charles A. Renz, Project Architect  
Mark L. Regier, Project Manager  
730 N. 9<sup>th</sup>, Salina KS 67401  
785 827 0386

CIVIL ENGINEER

DRIGGS DESIGN GROUP  
Christina Cook, P.E.  
1115 Westport Drive, Suite F  
Manhattan, KS 66502  
785 320 6639

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

BOB D. CAMPBELL & CO.  
4338 Bellevue, Kansas City, MO 64111  
Chris Beverlin, P.E.  
816 531 4144

MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL

LST CONSULTING ENGINEERS  
4809 Vue Du Lac Place, Suite 201  
Manhattan KS 66503  
John Lewis-Smith, P E  
785 587 8042





## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page No.</u>
INVITATION TO BID	INV-1 - INV-2
PROJECT NARRATIVE	PN-1 – PN-2
INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS	INF-1 – INF-2
BID FORM	BF-1 – BF-2
AIA A201-2017 GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION	A201-2017-1-39
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT	SC-1 - SC-3
LIST OF DRAWINGS	LOD – 1
 <b>Division 1 - General Requirements</b>	
Section 01010 General Work Requirements	01010-1 – 01010-4
Section 01019 Special Provisions	01019-1 – 01019-3
Section 01020 Contract Consideration Forms	01020-1 – 01020-3
Section 01310 Project Management and Coordination	01310-1 – 01310-5
Section 01330 Submittal Procedures	01330-1 – 01330-6
Section 01500 Temporary Facilities	01500-1 – 01500-2
Section 01700 Project Closeout	01700-1 – 01700-6
Section 01731 Cutting and Patching	01731-1 – 01731-2
Section 01732 Selective Demolition	01732-1 – 01732-3
 <b>Division 2 - Site Work</b>	
Section 02110 Site Clearing	02110-1
Section 02205 Soil Materials	02205-1
Section 02211 Rough Grading	02211-1 – 02211-2
Section 02222 Excavating	02222-1
Section 02223 Backfilling	02223-1 – 02223-2
Section 02225 Trenching	02225-1 – 02225-2
Section 02260 Excavation Support and Protection	02260-1 – 02260-2
Section 02281 Termite Control -and Kansas Dept Agriculture Fact Sheet	02281-1 – 02281-4
Section 02700 Portland Cement Concrete Paving	02700-1 – 02700-3
Section 02764 Pavement Joint Sealants	02764-1 – 02764-3
 <b>Division 3 - Concrete</b>	
Section 03100 Concrete Formwork	03100-1 – 03100-3
Section 03200 Concrete Reinforcement	03200-1 – 03200-2
Section 03300 Cast-In-Place Concrete	03300-1 – 03300-4
 <b>Division 4 - Masonry</b>	
Section 04100 Mortar and Masonry Grout	04100-1 – 04100-2
Section 04300 Unit Masonry System	04300-1 – 04300-4
Section 04720 Cast Stone	04720-1 – 04720-4
 <b>Division 5 - Metals</b>	
Section 05120 Structural Steel	05120-1 – 05120-3
 <b>Division 6 - Wood and Plastics</b>	
Section 06100 Rough Carpentry	06100-1 – 06100-7
Section 06114 Wood Blocking	06114-1
Section 06160 0 Sheathing (ZIP Systems)	061600-1 – 061600-4
Section 06175 3 Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses	061753-1 – 061753-5
Section 06200 Finish Carpentry	06200-1 – 06200-2
Section 06410 Custom Casework	06410-1 – 06410-3
 <b>Division 7 - Thermal and Moisture Protection</b>	
Section 07181 Water Repellent Coating	07181-1
Section 07191 Dampproofing and Waterproofing	07191-1
Section 07212 Board Insulation	07212-1 – 07212-2
Section 07213 Batt Insulation	07213-1
Section 07241 Exterior Insulation & Finish System	07241-1 – 07241-4
Section 07611 Pre-Manufactured Sheet Metal	07611-1 – 07611-3
Section 07620 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim	07620-1 – 07620-2
Section 07631 Gutters and Downspouts	07631-1
Section 07900 Joint Sealers	07900-1 – 07900-2
 <b>Division 8 - Doors and Windows</b>	
Section 08211 Flush Wood Doors and Frames	08211-1 – 08211-2
Section 08410 Aluminum Entrances & Storefronts	08410-1 – 08410-3
Section 08520 Aluminum Windows	08520-1 – 08520-2
Section 08710 Door Hardware	08710-1 – 08710-2
Section 08800 Glazing	08800-1 – 08800-2
 <b>Division 9 - Finishes</b>	
Section 09260 Gypsum Board Systems	09260-1 – 09260-2
Section 09306 Floor and Wall Tile	09306-1 – 09306-2
Astra Bank – New Facility	TC-1
Dodge City, KS	Table of Contents JGR 25-3515

**Table Of Contents (Cont.)****Page No.**

Section 09511	Suspended Acoustical Ceilings	09511-1 – 09511-2
Section 09650	Resilient Flooring	09650-1 – 09650-2
Section 09688	Carpet, Glue-Down	09688-1 – 09688-2
Section 09900	Painting	09900-1 – 09900-4

**Division 10 - Specialties**

Section 10522	Fire Extinguishers, Cabinets, & Accessories	10522-1 – 10522-2
Section 10800	Toilet and Bath Accessories	10800-1 – 10800-2
Section 10850	Building Specialties	10850-1 – 10850-2

**Division 14 – 21 Not Used****Division 22 - Plumbing**

Section 220516	Expansion Fittings & Loops for Plumbing Piping	220516-1
Section 220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	220529-1 – 220529-3
Section 220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	220553-1 – 220553-2
Section 220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation	220719-1 - 220719-3
Section 221005	Plumbing Piping	221005-1 – 221005-11
Section 221006	Plumbing Piping Specialties	221006-1 – 221006-2
Section 223000	Plumbing Equipment	223000-1 – 223000-3
Section 224000	Plumbing Fixtures	224000-1 – 224000-2

**Division 23 - Heating Ventilating and Air Conditioning**

Section 230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	230593-1 – 230593-4
Section 230713	Duct Insulation	230713-1 – 230713-4
Section 230719	HVAC Piping Insulation	230719-1 – 230719-3
Section 232300	Refrigerant Piping	232300-1 – 232300-4
Section 233100	HVAC Ducts and Casings	233100-1 – 233100-4
Section 233300	Air Duct Accessories	233300-1 – 233300-3
Section 233423	Power Ventilators	233423-1 – 233423-2
Section 233700	Air Outlets and Inlets	233700-1 – 233700-2
Section 234000	HVAC Air Cleaning Devices	234000-1
Section 238126.13	Small-Capacity Split-System Air Conditioners	238126.13-1 – 238126.13-2

**Division 26 - Electrical**

Section 260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	260519-1 – 260519-5
Section 260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	260526-1 – 260526-5
Section 260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	260529-1 – 260529-3
Section 260534	Conduit	260534-1 – 260534-8
Section 260537	Boxes	260537-1 – 260537-5
Section 260553	Identification for Electrical Systems	260553-1 – 260553-7
Section 260923	Lighting Control Devices	260923-1 – 260923-5
Section 262416	Panelboards	262416-1 – 262416-6
Section 262717	Equipment Wiring	262717-1 – 262717-2
Section 262726	Wiring Devices	262726-1 – 262726-5
Section 262818	Enclosed Switches	262818-1 – 262818-3
Section 264300	Surge Protective Devices	264300-1 – 264300-3
Section 265100	Interior Lighting	265100-1 – 265100-5
Section 265600	Exterior Lighting	265600-1 – 265600-3

Project No. 25-3515

## PROJECT NARRATIVE

1. Sealed Bids, will be received by **Astra Bank** for the furnishing of all labor and materials as hereinafter specified for the construction of Astra Bank, New Facility. Bids shall be emailed, [ric@capitaldev.net](mailto:ric@capitaldev.net) or delivered to **Capital Development, attn: Ric Marboeuff, 200 W. Beeson, Suite A, Dodge City Kansas 67801 until 2:00 p.m. Thursday, September 25, 2025**. Bids received after this time will not be accepted. Bids will be opened in private session with the owner.
2. PROJECT SCOPE (includes, but not limited too):
  - a. Site work
    - 1) Grading.
    - 2) New concrete paving (drives and parking) and sidewalks.
    - 3) Extension of all utilities (water, gas, electric, sanitary sewer).
  - b. New 4,830 s.f. slab-on-grade building with drive-thru canopy.
    - 1) Exterior walls of combination face brick and cast stone wainscot over wood stud framing. EIFS over wood studs at upper clearstory area and miscellaneous areas.
    - 2) Prefinished standing seam metal roof system over wood trusses.
    - 3) Fixed insulated aluminum windows at exterior.
    - 4) Interior finishes: painted gypsum board walls, carpet, lvt, ceramic tile, suspended ceilings, solid core wood doors, and cabinetry.
    - 5) Conventional hvac systems, plumbing, led lighting, power, and data.
3. COMPLETION TIME  
Completion date for the project is to be bid in calendar days: To be Bid.
4. The GENERAL CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT will include General Construction, Mechanical, and Electrical Work combined into one Contract.  
**NOTE: CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT (DODGE CITY, KS) IS THE GENERAL CONTRACTOR FOR THIS PROJECT.**
5. As a condition precedent to Contract Award, type of work completed and proposed Subcontractor will be carefully considered. Owner is not obligated to accept lowest or any other bid.
6. The DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS, and CONTRACT DOCUMENTS may be obtained by bona fide Prime Bidders (Mechanical, and Electrical) from Jones Gillam Renz Architects at 730 North 9th Street Salina KS 67401, 785.827.0386 upon deposit of \$250.00 for one set of GENERAL CONSTRUCTION, MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS, and SPECIFICATIONS.

Those who submit bids may obtain refund by returning sets in good condition no more than two (2) weeks after bids have been opened. No refund of deposit will be made to Contractors not submitting a bid, unless all documents are returned in good condition five (5) days prior to time of receiving bids. 2nd set of Drawings and Specifications may be purchased by Prime Contractors for \$250.00 (no refund)

Drawings and specifications will be available for review on the website at [www.jgrarchitects.com](http://www.jgrarchitects.com). **Subcontractors and suppliers who are bidding from documents via website or plan room, must contact Ric Marboeuff, Capital Development, 620-408-7644 or [ric@capitaldev.net](mailto:ric@capitaldev.net) to register as an official Plan Holder.**

Partial Sets of Contract Drawings and Documents or individual sheets may be obtained by Subcontractors, material suppliers, etc., (no refund) for the following amounts:

Drawings - \$4.00 per sheet

Specification sheets accompanying these drawings, 25¢ per page

Postage and Handling - \$20.00 per partial order

CONTRACT DOCUMENTS will be on file and may be examined at the following locations:

Jones Gillam Renz Architects, 730 North 9th Street, Salina, KS 67401, ph. 785-827-0386,  
[www.jgrarchitects.com](http://www.jgrarchitects.com)

Associated General Contractors of Kansas, ph. 316-928-8635, [www.agcks.org](http://www.agcks.org)

Dodge Construction Network, ph. 877-784-9556, [www.construction.com](http://www.construction.com)

Construct Connect, ph. 877-969-2909, [www.constructconnect.com](http://www.constructconnect.com)

Hays Area Chamber of Commerce, 2700 Vine, Hays KS 67601

Dodge City Area Chamber of Commerce, 101 E. Wyatt Earp Blvd., Dodge City KS 67801

Garden City Area Chamber of Commerce, 1509 E. Fulton St., Garden City KS 67846

BY ORDER OF:

Kyle A. Campbell, President/CEO

Astra Bank

August 28, 2025



## INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS

1. **EXAMINATION**  
Before submitting their bid, each Bidder shall carefully examine all documents pertaining to the work, visit the site of the work, and inform themselves as to all existing conditions under which the work will be performed. Submission of a bid will be considered presumptive evidence that the Bidder is fully aware of the conditions of the work, requirements of the Contract Documents, pertinent State and Local codes, conditions of labor and material markets, and has made allowances in their bid for all work and all contingencies. Contractors will not be given extra payments for conditions which can be determined by examining the site and documents.
2. **QUESTIONS AND INTERPRETATION OF DOCUMENTS**  
Should a Bidder be in doubt as to the meaning of any part of the Drawings, Specifications or other proposed Contract Documents and/or find discrepancies in or omissions from the Drawings, Specifications and Contract Documents, he shall contact the Architect immediately per Article 3, Subparagraph 3.2.1 of the AIA General Conditions. Any interpretation of the proposed documents will be made only by Addendum duly issued and copy of such Addendum will be emailed to each person receiving a set of such documents. The Architect and Owner will not be responsible for any other explanation or interpretation of the proposed documents.
3. **GENERAL CONSTRUCTION BID**
  - a. The General Construction bid shall incorporate all of the departments of Work (General Construction, Electrical, and Mechanical Work) into one (1) bid.
  - b. The General Contractor shall assume all responsibility for supervision and coordination of the Work.
  - c. The General Contractor shall carry and pay the premium covering the General Construction Work, for Contractors and Subcontractors Insurance as specified in Supplementary Conditions of the Contract.
4. **BID PROCEDURE**
  - a. Bids will be received at the time and place stated in the INVITATION TO BID. Bids received after the time stated will be returned unopened.
  - b. **Emailed bids will be accepted by the office of Capital Development.**
  - c. Any addenda issued during the time of preparation of bids are to be acknowledged on the Bid Form and in closing a Contract, they will become a part thereof.
  - d. Each Bidder is required to bid all alternates included in the Bid Form, except that should they desire not to bid an Alternate, they may insert the words "No Bid" in the space provided for such Alternates. In such case, if it is determined to use such Alternate, the fact that the cost of the material, type, or method bid may be lower than that chosen shall not constitute the basis of a claim by the Bidder that the Contract be awarded to him. If an Alternate Price called for involves no change in price, Bidder shall so indicate by writing the words, "No Change" in the space provided. Refer to Section 01019 - SPECIAL PROVISIONS. Each Bidder is required to fill in all unit cost items shown on the Bid Form. Failure to comply may be cause for rejection.
  - e. Bids are preferred to be submitted on the forms provided. All blank spaces on the forms shall be fully completed in words as well as figures. Bid Forms must be signed in longhand, with name typed below signature. Where Bidder is a corporation, Bid Forms must be signed with legal name of corporation, followed by the name of the State of Incorporation, the legal signature of an officer authorized to bind the corporation to a contract, Attest and Seal Impression.
5. **WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS**  
A bid may be withdrawn on written or emailed request and by request of Contractor personally, received or made prior to time fixed for bid opening. No bid may be withdrawn after opening of bids.
6. **INTERPRETATION OF QUOTED PRICES**  
In case of a difference in written words and figures in a bid, the amount stated in written words shall govern.
7. **TIME OF CONSTRUCTION AND PENALTY CLAUSE**  
Refer to Section 01019 - SPECIAL PROVISIONS.

8. **DISQUALIFICATION**  
The Owner reserves the right to disqualify bids, before or after opening upon evidence of collusion with intent to defraud or illegal practices upon part of the Bidder. Bids will be opened as stated in the Project Narrative.
9. **SALES TAX EXEMPTION**  
Refer to Section 01019 - SPECIAL PROVISIONS.

END OF SECTION

**Astra Bank  
New Facility, Dodge City, KS  
BID FORM**

---

Bid of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Firm Name)

Date \_\_\_\_\_

BID FORM FOR:

Astra Bank – New Facility, Dodge City Kansas  
Project No. 25-3515

In compliance with your INVITATION TO BID, the undersigned proposes to furnish all labor and materials and perform all work for the General Construction, including Mechanical and Electrical Work, incidental for the construction and equipping of **Astra Bank – New Facility, Dodge City Kansas**, in strict accordance with the Specifications and Drawings dated August 28, 2025 for consideration of the following:

**BASE BID** \_\_\_\_\_ **DOLLARS**  
\$ \_\_\_\_\_

**The Base Bid includes all allowances as outlined in Section 01019 – Special Provisions.**

Number of consecutive Calendar Days to complete this project in accordance with Drawings and Specifications, to be coordinated with General Contractor and subject to Liquidated Damages,

Section 01019 - SPECIAL PROVISIONS -- \_\_\_\_\_ **DAYS**

The Undersigned acknowledges receipt of the following addenda:

Addendum #1 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum #2 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum #3 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum #4 \_\_\_\_\_ Addendum #5 \_\_\_\_\_

**ALTERNATE PRICES:** For the Alternates as described in the Specifications and/or Drawings, the UNDERSIGNED agrees to ADD or DEDUCT the following amounts to or from the BASE BID as hereinafter itemized:

<u><b>Alternate No.</b></u>	<u><b>Add</b></u>	<u><b>Deduct</b></u>
<u>Alternate No. 1</u> (As described by Addendum)	\$ _____	\$ _____
<u>Alternate No. 2</u> (As described by Addendum)	\$ _____	\$ _____
<u>Alternate No. 3</u> (As described by Addendum)	\$ _____	\$ _____
<u>Alternate No. 4</u> (As described by Addendum)	\$ _____	\$ _____

**MAJOR SUBCONTRACTORS:**

Bidder shall identify, as part of this Bid, the major Subcontractors he proposes to use in performance of the Work under this Contract.

**Mechanical Construction**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name, Address

**Plumbing Construction**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name, Address

**Electrical Construction**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name, Address

**I (or WE) FURTHER AGREE AS FOLLOWS:**

1. To furnish labor and materials for additional work (except Mechanical and Electrical) ordered by the Owner and for which no pre-agreed upon amount has been determined for the cost of the labor and materials involved plus 10% for overhead and profit.
2. To furnish supervision and coordination for 10% of the cost of additional Mechanical and Electrical work ordered by the Owner.
3. To accept the provisions of Section 01019 – SPECIAL PROVISIONS regarding the date of completion of the Project and Penalty Clause.
4. If written notice of the acceptance of the Bid is mailed, emailed or delivered to the Undersigned within 60 days after the date of the opening of the Bids, or anytime thereafter before this Bid is withdrawn, the Undersigned will, within ten (10) days after the date of such mailing, emailing or delivery of such notice, execute and deliver a contract in accordance with AIA Document A101, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, and give Performance Bond in accordance with the Specifications and bid as accepted.

**DECLARATION:**

1. The Undersigned hereby declares that he has carefully examined the Invitation and Information for Bidders, the Drawings and Specifications, has visited the actual location of the Work and has consulted his sources of supply, and has satisfied himself as to all quantities and conditions, and understands that in signing this Bid, he waives all rights to plead any misunderstanding regarding the same.
2. The Undersigned understands that his competence and responsibility and that of his proposed subcontractors, time of completion, as well as any other factors of interest to the Owner will be considered in making the award. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids, to accept or reject alternate bids and unit prices and to waive technicalities concerning the bids received, as it may be in his interest to do so.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Legal Name of Bidder)

(SEAL, if bid is by a corporation)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Address of Bidder)

BY \_\_\_\_\_ in longhand

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Title) Typewritten



# AIA<sup>®</sup> Document A201<sup>™</sup> – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

### for the following PROJECT:

*(Name and location or address)*

Astra Bank, New Facility  
Dodge City, Kansas  
JGR Project No. 25-3515

### THE OWNER:

*(Name, legal status and address)*

Kyle Campbell, President/CEO  
Astra Bank  
207 Eagle Dr.  
Abilene, KS 67410

### THE ARCHITECT:

*(Name, legal status and address)*

Jones Gillam Renz Architects, Inc.  
730 N Ninth St, PO Box 2928  
Salina, KS 67402  
785-827-0386

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 1  | GENERAL PROVISIONS                               |
| 2  | OWNER  |
| 3  | CONTRACTOR                                       |
| 4  | ARCHITECT  |
| 5  | SUBCONTRACTORS                                   |
| 6  | CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS |
| 7  | CHANGES IN THE WORK                              |
| 8  | TIME   |
| 9  | PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION                          |
| 10 | PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY               |
| 11 | INSURANCE AND BONDS                              |
| 12 | UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK                |
| 13 | MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS                         |
| 14 | TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT        |
| 15 | CLAIMS AND DISPUTES                              |

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503<sup>™</sup>, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

## INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

### **Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, **12.3**

### **Access to Work**

**3.16**, 6.2.1, **12.1**

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5,  
10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

### **Additional Inspections and Testing**

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

### **Additional Time, Claims for**

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

### **Administration of the Contract**

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

### **Allowances**

**3.8**

### **Applications for Payment**

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,  
3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

### **Arbitration**

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

## **ARCHITECT**

**4**

**Architect**, Definition of

**4.1.1**

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2,  
9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1,  
13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2,  
9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1,  
13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16,  
3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5,  
9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

### **Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work**

**5.2**

### **Basic Definitions**

**1.1**

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5,  
15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

### **Bonds, Performance, and Payment**

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**

### **Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

**1.8**

Building Permit

3.7.1

### **Capitalization**

**1.3**

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

## **Certificates for Payment**

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
13.4.4

Certificates of Insurance  
9.10.2

## **Change Orders**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

**Change Orders**, Definition of  
**7.2.1**

## **CHANGES IN THE WORK**

2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

**Claims**, Definition of  
**15.1.1**

**Claims**, Notice of  
1.6.2, 15.1.3

## **CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4  
**Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims**  
15.4.1

## **Claims for Additional Cost**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**

## **Claims for Additional Time**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**

**Concealed or Unknown Conditions**, **Claims for**  
**3.7.4**

## **Claims for Damages**

3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

**Claims Subject to Arbitration**  
15.4.1

**Cleaning Up**  
**3.15**, 6.3

**Commencement of the Work**, Conditions Relating to  
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**

**Commencement of the Work**, Definition of  
**8.1.2**

## **Communications**

3.9.1, **4.2.4**

## **Completion, Conditions Relating to**

3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2

## **COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND** **9**

## **Completion, Substantial**

3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

## **Compliance with Laws**

2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

## **Concealed or Unknown Conditions**

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

## **Conditions of the Contract**

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

## **Consent, Written**

3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2

## **Consolidation or Joinder**

## **15.4.4**

## **CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

1.1.4, 6

**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of  
**7.3.1**

## **Construction Change Directives**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1

## **Construction Schedules**, Contractor's

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

## **Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

**5.4**, 14.2.2.2

## **Continuing Contract Performance**

## **15.1.4**

## **Contract**, Definition of

**1.1.2**

## **CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE**

**5.4.1.1**, **5.4.2**, **11.5**, **14**

## **Contract Administration**

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

## **Contract Award and Execution**, Conditions Relating to

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

**Contract Documents**, Copies Furnished and Use of  
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

**Contract Documents**, Definition of  
**1.1.1**

## **Contract Sum**

2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5**, **15.2.5**

**Contract Sum**, Definition of

**9.1**

## **Contract Time**

1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

**Contract Time**, Definition of

**8.1.1**

## **CONTRACTOR**

**3**

**Contractor**, Definition of

**3.1**, **6.1.2**

**Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contractor's Employees  
2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

**Contractor's Liability Insurance**  
**11.1**  
Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors  
and Owner's Forces  
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4  
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors  
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7,  
9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4  
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect  
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2,  
7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3,  
11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1  
Contractor's Representations  
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2  
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the  
Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8  
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents  
3.2  
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work  
2.2.2, 9.7  
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract  
14.1  
Contractor's Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2,  
9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Contractor's Superintendent  
3.9, 10.2.6  
Contractor's Supervision and Construction  
Procedures  
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4  
Coordination and Correlation  
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1  
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications  
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11  
Copyrights  
1.5, 3.17  
Correction of Work  
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, 12.2, 12.3,  
15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1  
**Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**  
**1.2**  
**Cost, Definition of**  
**7.3.4**  
Costs  
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3,  
7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2,  
12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14  
**Cutting and Patching**  
**3.14, 6.2.5**

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate  
Contractors  
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4  
Damage to the Work  
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4  
Damages, Claims for  
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2,  
11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
Damages for Delay  
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2  
**Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of**  
**8.1.2**  
**Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of**  
**8.1.3**  
**Day, Definition of**  
**8.1.4**  
Decisions of the Architect  
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4,  
7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2,  
14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2  
**Decisions to Withhold Certification**  
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.7, 14.1.1.3  
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance,  
Rejection and Correction of  
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3,  
9.10.4, 12.2.1  
Definitions  
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1,  
6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1  
**Delays and Extensions of Time**  
**3.2, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7,**  
**10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5**  
**Digital Data Use and Transmission**  
**1.7**  
Disputes  
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2  
**Documents and Samples at the Site**  
**3.11**  
**Drawings, Definition of**  
**1.1.5**  
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of  
3.11  
Effective Date of Insurance  
8.2.2  
**Emergencies**  
**10.4, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.5**  
Employees, Contractor's  
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1  
Equipment, Labor, or Materials  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,  
9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2  
Execution and Progress of the Work  
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1,  
3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1,  
9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4



Extensions of Time  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**

**Failure of Payment**  
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Faulty Work  
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)

**Final Completion and Final Payment**  
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Financial Arrangements, Owner's  
2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

**GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**1**

**Governing Law**

**13.1**

Guarantees (See Warranty)

**Hazardous Materials and Substances**  
10.2.4, **10.3**

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers  
5.2.1

**Indemnification**  
3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

**Information and Services Required of the Owner**  
2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

**Initial Decision**  
**15.2**

**Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**  
1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions  
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority  
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

**Injury or Damage to Person or Property**  
**10.2.8**, 10.4

Inspections  
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

Instructions to Bidders  
1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor  
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

**Instruments of Service, Definition of**  
**1.1.7**

Insurance  
6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, **11**

Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration  
11.1.4, 11.2.3

**Insurance, Contractor's Liability**  
**11.1**

Insurance, Effective Date of  
8.2.2, 14.4.2

**Insurance, Owner's Liability**  
**11.2**

**Insurance, Property**  
**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Insurance, Stored Materials  
9.3.2

**INSURANCE AND BONDS**  
**11**

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy  
9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of  
11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents  
1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

**Interest**  
**13.5**

**Interpretation**  
1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written  
4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award  
15.4.2

**Labor and Materials, Equipment**  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes  
8.3.1

Laws and Regulations  
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

Liens  
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of  
12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability  
3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1

Limitations of Time  
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5

**Materials, Hazardous**  
**10.2.4**, **10.3**

Materials, Labor, Equipment and  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and Procedures of Construction  
3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien  
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

**Mediation**  
8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1

**Minor Changes in the Work**  
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, 7.4

## MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### 13

#### Modifications, Definition of

##### 1.1.1

#### Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2

#### Mutual Responsibility

##### 6.2

#### Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of

9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3

#### Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of

2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2

#### Notice

1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1

#### Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### Notice of Claims

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

#### Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.4.1, 13.4.2

#### Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

#### Occupancy

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

#### Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## OWNER

### 2

#### Owner, Definition of

##### 2.1.1

#### Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements

2.2, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

#### Owner, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

#### Owner's Insurance

##### 11.2

#### Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

#### Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

2.5, 14.2.2

#### Owner's Right to Clean Up

##### 6.3

#### Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

##### 6.1

#### Owner's Right to Stop the Work

##### 2.4

#### Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

##### 14.3

#### Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

#### Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

#### Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, 9.9

#### Patching, Cutting and

3.14, 6.2.5

#### Patents

3.17

#### Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### Payment, Certificates for

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

#### Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, 9.7, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

#### Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.10, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2

#### Payments, Progress

9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

## PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### 9

#### Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

#### PCB

10.3.1

#### Performance Bond and Payment Bond

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2

#### Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

2.3.1, 3.7, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

## PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF

### 10

#### Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

#### Product Data, Definition of

##### 3.12.2

#### Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings

3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7

#### Progress and Completion

4.2.2, 8.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### Progress Payments

9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

**Project, Definition of**  
**1.1.4**  
 Project Representatives  
 4.2.10  
**Property Insurance**  
 10.2.5, **11.2**  
**Proposal Requirements**  
 1.1.1  
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**  
**10**  
 Regulations and Laws  
 1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,  
 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4  
 Rejection of Work  
 4.2.6, 12.2.1  
 Releases and Waivers of Liens  
 9.3.1, 9.10.2  
 Representations  
 3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1  
 Representatives  
 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1  
 Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
 3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10  
 Retainage  
 9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
**Review of Contract Documents and Field**  
**Conditions by Contractor**  
**3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3**  
 Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and  
 Architect  
 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2  
 Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples  
 by Contractor  
 3.12  
**Rights and Remedies**  
 1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,  
 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,  
 12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4  
**Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**  
**3.17**  
 Rules and Notices for Arbitration  
 15.4.1  
**Safety of Persons and Property**  
**10.2, 10.4**  
**Safety Precautions and Programs**  
 3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4  
**Samples, Definition of**  
**3.12.3**  
**Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and**  
**3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7**  
**Samples at the Site, Documents and**  
**3.11**  
**Schedule of Values**  
 9.2, 9.3.1  
 Schedules, Construction  
 3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Separate Contracts and Contractors  
 1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2  
**Separate Contractors, Definition of**  
**6.1.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Definition of**  
**3.12.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**  
 3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7  
**Site, Use of**  
**3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1**  
 Site Inspections  
 3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
 Site Visits, Architect's  
 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
 Special Inspections and Testing  
 4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4  
**Specifications, Definition of**  
**1.1.6**  
**Specifications**  
 1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14  
 Statute of Limitations  
 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
 Stopping the Work  
 2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1  
 Stored Materials  
 6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4  
**Subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.1**  
**SUBCONTRACTORS**  
**5**  
 Subcontractors, Work by  
 1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2,  
 9.6.7  
**Subcontractual Relations**  
**5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1**  
 Submittals  
 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8,  
 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
 Submittal Schedule  
 3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7  
**Subrogation, Waivers of**  
**6.1.1, 11.3**  
**Substances, Hazardous**  
**10.3**  
**Substantial Completion**  
 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2,  
 15.1.2  
**Substantial Completion, Definition of**  
**9.8.1**  
 Substitution of Subcontractors  
 5.2.3, 5.2.4  
 Substitution of Architect  
 2.3.3  
 Substitutions of Materials  
 3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8  
**Sub-subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.2**

Subsurface Conditions

3.7.4

**Successors and Assigns**

**13.2**

**Superintendent**

3.9, 10.2.6

**Supervision and Construction Procedures**

1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

**Suppliers**

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6, 9.10.5, 14.2.1

**Surety**

5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2, 15.2.7

**Surety, Consent of**

9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

**Surveys**

1.1.7, 2.3.4

**Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**14.3**

**Suspension of the Work**

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

**Suspension or Termination of the Contract**

5.4.1.1, 14

**Taxes**

3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

**Termination by the Contractor**

**14.1, 15.1.7**

**Termination by the Owner for Cause**

5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**14.4**

**Termination of the Architect**

2.3.3

**Termination of the Contractor Employment**

14.2.2

## **TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

**14**

**Tests and Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**

**TIME**

**8**

**Time, Delays and Extensions of**

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

**Time Limits**

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4

**Time Limits on Claims**

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

**Title to Work**

9.3.2, 9.3.3

## **UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

**Uncovering of Work**

**12.1**

**Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown**

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

**Unit Prices**

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

**Use of Documents**

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

**Use of Site**

**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

**Values, Schedule of**

**9.2**, 9.3.1

**Waiver of Claims by the Architect**

13.3.2

**Waiver of Claims by the Contractor**

9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**

**Waiver of Claims by the Owner**

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**

**Waiver of Consequential Damages**

14.2.4, 15.1.7

**Waiver of Liens**

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

**Waivers of Subrogation**

6.1.1, **11.3**

**Warranty**

**3.5**, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 15.1.2

**Weather Delays**

8.3, 15.1.6.2

**Work, Definition of**

**1.1.3**

**Written Consent**

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

**Written Interpretations**

4.2.11, 4.2.12

**Written Orders**

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## **ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **§ 1.1 Basic Definitions**

#### **§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents**

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### **§ 1.1.2 The Contract**

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### **§ 1.1.3 The Work**

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### **§ 1.1.4 The Project**

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### **§ 1.1.5 The Drawings**

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### **§ 1.1.6 The Specifications**

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### **§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service**

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### **§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker**

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### **§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.



**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### **§ 1.3 Capitalization**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### **§ 1.4 Interpretation**

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service**

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™-2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

### **§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™-2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document

G202™-2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## **ARTICLE 2 OWNER**

### **§ 2.1 General**

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### **§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### **§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### **§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

### **ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR**

#### **§ 3.1 General**

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

#### **§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.



**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### **§ 3.4 Labor and Materials**

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

**§ 3.4.3** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### **§ 3.5 Warranty**

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### **§ 3.6 Taxes**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### **§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### **§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions**

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### **§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### **§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

### **§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and

delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

### **§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely



upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### **§ 3.18 Indemnification**

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## **ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT**

### **§ 4.1 General**

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### **§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract**

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

### **§ 4.2.4 Communications**

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.5** Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

**§ 4.2.6** The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

**§ 4.2.7** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

**§ 4.2.9** The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

**§ 4.2.10** If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

**§ 4.2.12** Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

**§ 4.2.13** The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.14** The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### § 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.



When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

**§ 5.4.2** Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

**§ 6.1.3** The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### **§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

**§ 6.2.1** The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### **§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up**

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## **ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

### **§ 7.1 General**

**§ 7.1.1** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

**§ 7.1.3** Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### **§ 7.2 Change Orders**

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### **§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives**

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

#### **§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work**

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

### **ARTICLE 8 TIME**

#### **§ 8.1 Definitions**

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

## **§ 8.2 Progress and Completion**

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

## **§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time**

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## **ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

### **§ 9.1 Contract Sum**

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### **§ 9.2 Schedule of Values**

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

### **§ 9.3 Applications for Payment**

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.



**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

#### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

#### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;

- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.5.2** When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 9.5.3** When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

**§ 9.5.4** If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

## **§ 9.6 Progress Payments**

**§ 9.6.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

**§ 9.6.2** The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

**§ 9.6.3** The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**§ 9.6.4** The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

**§ 9.6.5** The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

**§ 9.6.6** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.6.7** Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

**§ 9.6.8** Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

### **§ 9.7 Failure of Payment**

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.8 Substantial Completion**

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

**§ 9.9.3** Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment**

**§ 9.10.1** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

**§ 9.10.2** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

**§ 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

**§ 9.10.5** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

### **ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

#### **§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs**

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

#### **§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property**

**§ 10.2.1** The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to



- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will

promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

#### **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

### **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or

expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

## **§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## **§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.



#### **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

#### **§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

### **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

#### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

#### **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

##### **§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

##### **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during

that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### **§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **§ 13.1 Governing Law**

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### **§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns**

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### **§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies**

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

## **§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections**

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## **§ 13.5 Interest**

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## **ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor**

**§ 14.1.1** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

**§ 14.1.2** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

**§ 14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

**§ 14.1.4** If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

## **§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 14.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.2.2** When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

**§ 14.2.3** When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

**§ 14.2.4** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

## **§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

## **§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;



- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

## **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

### **§ 15.1 Claims**

#### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### **§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### **§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost**

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### **§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.



**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

**§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

**§ 15.2.6.1** Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.2.7** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.8** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

### **§ 15.3 Mediation**

**§ 15.3.1** Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.3.2** The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

**§ 15.3.3** Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.3.4** The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

### **§ 15.4 Arbitration**

**§ 15.4.1** If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

**§ 15.4.1.1** A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

**§ 15.4.2** The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.



## SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

1. DEFINITIONS - Supplement Paragraph 1.1 as follows:
  - a. When words such as approved, proper, satisfactory, equal, and as directed are used, they imply such reference to the Architect's specific approval and directions.
  - b. Provide means to furnish and install.
  - c. The provisions of the Agreement take precedence over all other Contract Documents.
2. WARRANTY - Supplement Paragraph 3.5.1 as follows:
  - a. Contractor warrants to Owner and Architect that on receipt of notice from either of them, within the period of one (1) year following date of Substantial Completion, that defects in materials and/or workmanship have appeared in the Work, Contractor will promptly correct such defects to the state of condition originally required by the Contract Documents at Contractor's expense.
3. SHOP DRAWINGS - Supplement Paragraph 3.12 as follows:
  - a. The Contractor shall submit **one (1) electronic copy** of all Shop or Setting Drawings and Schedules required for the work of the various trades, after same have been checked and compared with the Contract Document Requirements, and after checking with field conditions at the job and so certified on the Drawings by the Contractor. Above Drawings will not be checked by Architect unless same bear certification.
  - b. Architect's approval is subject to notations on Drawings, Compliance with Drawings and Specifications, and conditions and measurements at project. Measurements and quantity not checked or approved.
4. SAMPLES - Supplement Subparagraph 3.12.3 as follows:
  - a. All samples as called for in the various Sections of this Specification and any other samples, as directed, shall be furnished by the Contractor for approval.
  - b. All samples of materials that require approval as to color, texture, finish and type shall be furnished at the same time, so that an intelligent selection of colors and textures may be made by the Architect.
5. COLOR SELECTIONS
  - a. The Contractor shall provide for and coordinate into the project construction schedule, a 6-week time frame for the Architect/Designer to make final color selections from Contractor's submittals, obtain approval from the Owner and to submit a color schedule, indicating what colors go where, to the Contractor. Time frame begins when Architect has received 100% of submittals listed below.
  - b. Submittals, i.e., actual samples, manufacturers' literature, full color line options, etc., shall include as a minimum, but not limited to:
    - Carpet Types
    - Sheet Vinyl Flooring
    - Vinyl Composition Tile Flooring
    - Vinyl Base
    - Ceramic Wall Tile
    - Ceiling Types
    - Paint
    - Corner Guards
    - Plastic Laminate (Manufacturer)
    - Wood Stain for Doors and Woodwork
    - Aluminum Storefront System
6. CLEAN UP - Supplement Paragraph 3.15 as follows:
  - a. Each Contractor shall, at all times, remove any and all of his rubbish from the buildings and grounds and keep the building site clean.
  - b. In addition to the general broom cleaning, the General Contractor shall do the following special cleaning for all trades at the completion of the work:
    - 1) Glass. Remove putty, stains and paint from all glass and wash and polish same. Care shall be taken not to scratch the glass.
    - 2) Painted, Decorated, and Stained Work. Remove all marks, stains, fingerprints and other soil or dirt from all painted, decorated, and stained work.
    - 3) Temporary Protection. Remove all temporary protections; clean and polish all floors at completion.
    - 4) Woodwork. Clean and polish all woodwork upon completion.

- 5) Hardware. Clean and polish all hardware for all trades. This shall include removal of all stains, dust, dirt, paint, etc., upon completion.
- 6) Tile Work. Remove all spots, soil, and paint from all tile work, wash same upon completion.
- 7) Fixtures and Equipment. Clean all fixtures and equipment, removing all stains, paint, dirt, and dust.
- c. All combustible rubbish, and all debris and other rubbish shall be removed entirely from the premises.

7. MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTORS - Supplement Paragraph 6.2 as follows:

- a. General Contractor shall assume general coordination and direction of the project. General Contractor shall cooperate with Mechanical and Electrical Contractors and other subcontractors and/or suppliers on the Work and install their work in sequence to facilitate and not delay the completion of the project. The Architect is not the coordinator or expeditor of the work of the contractors and/or subcontractors referred to hereinbefore.

8. CHANGES IN THE WORK

Refer to Paragraph 7.2 and insert the following:

- a. Whenever a Change Order involves net cost decrease, the CREDIT to the Owner shall be such net cost decrease. Whenever a Change Order involves a summary net increase, the Contract shall be increased by the amount of such net cost increase plus 10% of such net cost for overhead and profit. The General Contractor will furnish supervision and coordination for 10% of the cost of additional Mechanical and Electrical work ordered by the Owner.
- b. The Contractor shall furnish the Owner an itemized accounting with supporting data used in computing the value of any change that might be ordered.
- c. Change Orders must state a number of added days or days to be deleted from completion time. If no change in days is required by the change order, write NONE. Failure to comply with above voids any later request for extra time.

9. APPLICATION FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS AND CERTIFICATION FOR PAYMENT

- a. Amend Subparagraph 9.3.1 and insert the following: On or before the 25th day of each month, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or Architect may require.
- b. Amend Subparagraph 9.4.1 and insert: If the Contractor has made application for payment as above, the Architect will, with reasonable promptness and within seven (7) days after receipt of the application, issue an application for payment to the Owner, with a copy to the Contractor in the amount of 90% of the value of the Contract the Architect determines has been completed to the date of application, thus a 10% retainage, less any amount paid to the Contractor, or state in writing his reason for withholding an application as provided in Subparagraph 9.5.1.
- c. Date of payment of the Application for Payment by the Owner is hereby defined as the earliest possible date that the Owner can prepare vouchers after receipt of Application for Payment from the Architect and approval of same by any governing body of the Owner and issuance of vouchers to cover Application for Payment.

10. CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

- a. Workers' Compensation and Employers Liability Insurance - Refer to Subparagraph 11.1.1.
- b. Bodily Injury and Property Damage - Refer to Subparagraph 11.1.1. Limits shall be as follows:
  - (1) Limits of liability coverage shall be \$1,000,000.00 Combined Single Limit for Bodily Injury and Property Damage.
- c. Owner's Protective Liability Insurance - Refer to Paragraph 11.2 - Owner's Option.

11. PROPERTY INSURANCE MARINE ALL RISK SPECIAL BUILDERS RISK AND TRANSIT FORM

Refer to Paragraph 11.2.1 Property Insurance and insert the following:

- a. Until the Work is completed and accepted by the Owner, **the General Contractor shall effect and maintain total Property Insurance (Marine All Risk Special Builders Risk and Transit Form)** upon the Work at the site to 100% of the insurable value thereof (plus 8% of this insured value for Architect's Fee in connection with any loss covered by this insurance) including items of labor and materials connected therewith in or adjacent to the structure insured, materials in place or to be used as a part of the permanent construction, including surplus materials, shanties, protective fences,



bridges or temporary structures, miscellaneous materials and supplies incidental to the Work, and such scaffoldings, stagings, towers, forms and equipment as are not owned or rented by the Contractor, the cost of which is included in the cost of the work. EXCLUSIONS: This insurance does not cover any tools owned by mechanics; any tools, equipment, scaffoldings, stagings, towers and forms owned or rented by the Contractor; the capital value of which is not included in the cost of the work, nor loss of equipment, materials, tools, etc., by theft. **Contractor shall not commence construction prior to providing a copy of the policy to the Architect.**

- b. This insurance shall include the interest of the Owner, the Contractor, Subcontractor, and Sub-Subcontractor in the Work.

END OF SECTION



## LIST OF DRAWINGS

### **General**

---

	Cover
CFP	Code Footprint
ADA	ADA Programs

### **Civil**

---

1	Title Sheet	9	Utility Plan
2	General Notes	10	Utility Details
3	Existing Topographic Survey	11	Utility Details
4	Demolition Plan	12	Pavement Marking Plan
5	Site Plan	13	Erosion Control Plan
6	Grading Plan & Geometrics	14	Erosion Control Details
7	Grading Plan & Geometrics	15	Erosion Control Details
8	Pavement Details	16	Erosion Control Details

### **Architectural**

---

A1.1	Site Plan	A4.6	Standard Manufacturer's EIFS Details
A2.1	Floor Plans	A5.1	Roof Plan & Standard Manufacturer's Details
A3.1	Exterior Elevations	A7.1	Reflected Ceiling Plans
A3.2	Building Sections	A8.1	Enlarged Restroom Plan & Elevations
A4.1	Wall Sections	A9.1	Casework Elevations
A4.2	Wall Sections	A9.2	Casework Sections
A4.3	Wall Sections	A10.1	Interior Room Finish Schedule, Door Schedule, Window Schedule, & Details
A4.4	Wall Sections	A10.2	Window and Door Details
A4.5	Drive-Thru Window & Night Box Sections		

### **Structural**

---

S0.1	General Notes	S2.2	Roof Framing Plans & Header Schedule
S0.2	Standard Details	S3.1	Footing & Miscellaneous Details
S0.3	Standard Details & Miscellaneous Schedules	S3.2	Footing Details
S0.4	Column Base Plate Information & Column Connection Details	S4.1	Framing Details
		S4.2	Framing Details
S2.1	Foundation Plan & Schedules		

### **Mechanical-Electrical**

---

ME0.1	Mechanical-Electrical Symbols & Abbreviations
-------	---

### **Mechanical**

---

M1.1	Waste-Vent Plan & Domestic Water-Gas Plan	M6.1	Plumbing & HVAC Schedules
M1.2	HVAC Plan		

### **Electrical**

---

E1.0	Site Electrical Plan	E1.2	Power Plan & Special Systems Plan
E1.1	Lighting Plans & Light Fixture Schedule	E6.1	Panel Schedules & Riser Diagram



## SECTION 01010

### GENERAL WORK REQUIREMENTS

1. **GENERAL**  
Should conflict occur between these General Work Requirements and the General Conditions, the requirements of this Section take precedence.
2. **INTENT OF DOCUMENTS**  
The Contract Drawings are complementary and what is called for by anyone shall be as binding as if called by all. The intention of the documents is to include all labor and materials, equipment and transportation necessary for the proper execution of the work.
3. **MANUFACTURER'S DIRECTIONS**  
All manufactured articles, materials and equipment shall be applied, installed, connected, erected, used, cleaned and conditioned as directed by the manufacturers, unless herein specified to the contrary.
4. **COOPERATION - CONTRACTOR WITH OWNER**  
It shall be clearly understood that the Owner reserves the right to install various equipment in the building prior to completion and acceptance, and it shall be the duty of the Contractor to cooperate with the Owner's employees rendering such assistance and so arranging his work that the entire project will be delivered complete in the best possible condition when required.
5. **BUILDING PERMIT**  
As stated in Subparagraph 4.7.1, AIA DOCUMENT A201, General Conditions, the General Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit.
6. **CONSTRUCTION COORDINATION**
  - A. Before starting construction, a meeting shall be held with Contractor(s), Architect, and/or Consulting Engineers in attendance to plan and coordinate the schedule of construction and to review intent of Contract Documents. Contractor(s) shall follow instructions received at meeting in prosecuting the Work.
7. **MATERIALS - EQUIPMENT - SUBSTITUTION**
  - A. In general, these Specifications identify the required materials and equipment by naming one or more manufacturers, brand, model, catalog number, and/or other identification; the first-named manufacturer's product used as a basis for design; the other named brands considered equivalent. Equivalent brand manufacturers named must furnish products consistent with the Specifications for the first-named product, as determined by the Architect. Base Bid shall include only those brands named and must be used on the project, except as hereinafter provided.
  - B. Materials or equipment specified exclusively, Base Bid shall be based on same and used on project, except as hereinafter provided.
  - C. Prior to receipt of bids, should Contractor wish to incorporate in Base Bid, brands or products other than those named in the Specifications, he shall submit written request for substitution to Architect not later than seven (7) days prior to date bids are due. Architect will consider request and items approved will be listed in an addendum issued to all bidders.
  - D. After execution of Contract, substitution of product brands for those named in the Specifications will be considered, only if request is received within thirty (30) days after Contract Date and request includes showing credit due Owner.
  - E. Materials specified equivalent and those proposed for substitution must be equal or better than first-named material in construction, efficiency, utility, and aesthetic design and physical size shall not be larger than space provided for it. Request for substitution by full description and technical data in two (2) copies, including manufacturer's name, model, catalog number, photographs or cuts, physical dimensions, operating characteristics, and any other information for comparison.
  - F. Owner reserves the right:
    - 1) To require any or all bidders, before execution of Contract, to state what materials they will use.
    - 2) To require "if bound with the Bid Form," the Contractor to fill out a BID SUPPLEMENT listing the BASE BID and "ADD" or "DEDUCT" for other materials he proposes to use.

8. **APPROVAL OF SUBCONTRACTORS – MATERIALS**
- A. The Contractor, if requested, must submit for approval before signing Agreement, list of Subcontractors and material suppliers enumerating items of work to be performed, name of materials, equipment, etc., to be furnished and/or installed. Refer to Paragraph - MATERIALS - EQUIPMENT - SUBSTITUTION.
  - B. If the list is not requested prior to signing of Agreement, list, as described in previous paragraph, shall be furnished within ten (10) days of signing Agreement.
9. **PROTECTION - Supplement, ARTICLE 10, AIA GENERAL CONDITIONS**
- A. Refer to Paragraph - WEATHER CONDITIONS.
  - B. Each Contractor shall assume responsibility for his materials stored on the premises.
  - C. General Contractor shall take charge and assume general responsibility for proper protection of project during construction.
  - D. The General Contractor shall protect trees, shrubs, lawns, and all landscape from damage, providing guards and covering. Damaged work shall be repaired or replaced at his expense. Protect streets and sidewalks and make repairs at his expense.
    - 1) Water Protection. The General Contractor shall, at all times, protect the excavation, trenches, and/or the building from damage by rain water, spring water, ground water, backing up of drains or sewers and all other water. He shall provide all pumps and equipment and enclosures to provide this protection.
    - 2) Temporary Drainage. The General Contractor shall construct and maintain all necessary temporary drainage and do all pumping necessary to keep the excavation free of water.
    - 3) Snow and Ice. The General Contractor shall remove all snow and ice from public sidewalks and from the building, as may be required for the proper protection and/or prosecution of the Work.
    - 4) Bracing, Shoring, and Sheeting. The General Contractor shall provide all shoring, bracing and sheeting as required for safety and for the proper execution of the work and have same removed when the work is completed.
    - 5) Guard Lights. The General Contractor shall provide and maintain guard lights at all barricades, railings, obstructions in the streets, roads or sidewalks and at all trenches or pits adjacent to public walks or roads.
    - 6) Weather Conditions. The General Contractor shall, at all times, provide protection against weather; rain, winds, storms, frost, or heat, so as to maintain all work, materials, apparatus, and fixtures, free from injury or damage. At the end of the day's work, all new work likely to be damaged shall be covered.
10. **WEATHER CONDITIONS**
- The Contractor shall protect all portions of his work and all materials, at all times from damage by water, freezing, frost and is to repair, replace and make good to the satisfaction of the Architect, any portion of same which may in the Architect's opinion, have been damaged by the elements.
11. **GRADES, LINES, LEVELS, AND SURVEYS**
- The Owner will establish the lot lines, restrictions and a bench mark. All other grades, lines, levels, and bench marks shall be established and maintained by the General Contractor, who shall be responsible for same. The General Contractor shall verify all grades, lines, levels, and dimensions as shown on the Drawings and he shall report all errors or inconsistencies in the above to the Architect before commencing work.
- A. The General Contractor shall provide and maintain well-built batter boards at all corners. He shall establish bench marks in not less than two (2) widely separated places. As the work progresses, he shall establish bench marks at each floor, giving exact levels of the various floors.
  - B. As the work progresses, the General Contractor shall lay out in the forms and the rough flooring the exact location of all partitions as a guide to all trades.
  - C. The General Contractor shall verify all grades, lines, levels, and dimensions as shown on the Drawings and he shall report any errors or inconsistencies in the above to the Architect before commencing work.



12. **USE OF COMPLETED PORTIONS**

The Owner reserves the right to take possession of and use any completed or partially completed portions of the building, and further reserves the right to install equipment and facilities which are not a part of the Contract, notwithstanding the fact that the time of completion of entire work or portions thereof may not have expired; but such taking possession or installation of facilities shall not be deemed an acceptance of any work not completed in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner, in taking possession of completed portions or installing such equipment, and facilities, shall do so at his own expense any damage which may occur either directly or indirectly by reason of such action.

- A. **Building Completion-Occupancy.** Owner reserves the right to occupy building when the time for completion of work as stipulated in Contract has been reached, even though all parts of the work have not been completed and accepted by Owner. All work, including heating, electrical, and water service, will be discontinued only to Owner schedule.
- B. **Limit of Contract** is not confined to any particular area of the site, but includes any area required to perform work shown on the Drawings and/or specified in these Specifications.

13. **REQUIREMENTS IMMEDIATELY AFTER EXECUTION OF CONTRACT**

Immediately after execution of the Contract, the Contractor shall deliver to the Architect the following items which are described more fully in following Articles:

Schedule of Values  
Schedule of Operations  
Progress Charts  
Samples  
Superintendent's name and resume of experience  
List of Subcontractors and Material Suppliers

- A. **Schedule of Values** on AIA Form G702, or other form approved by the Architect, a detailed breakdown of the Contract Sum indicating the amounts allotted to the various divisions of the work for labor and material. The schedule will serve as a guide to the Architect in determining the amounts due each month as the work progresses. The schedule shall be broken down as directed by the Architect.
- B. **Schedule of Operations** based on the above Schedule of Values and indicating the progress of the work up to the first day of each month shall be prepared by the Contractor in a form approved by the Architect and shall be delivered to the Architect in duplicate with each application for payment.
- C. **Progress Charts** based on the above specified schedule of operations and indicating the progress of the work up to the first day of each month shall be prepared by the Contractor in a form approved by the Architect and shall be delivered to the Architect in duplicate with each application for payment. Progress charts shall be in the form of a bar graph.

14. **CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURE AND PHASING**

- A. Each Contractor shall schedule his work so as to cause a minimum of interference with business operations during all of the construction work.
- B. **In-Use Areas.** Construction work within areas immediately adjacent to existing in-use areas shall be coordinated with the Owner, so that work is accomplished during periods of light occupancy of the areas and cause the least disturbance. Work in and adjacent to in-use areas shall be prosecuted by methods that will create the least amount of noise. Work shall be prefabricated away from office areas when practical to do so. New facilities shall be ready for use prior to disturbing existing areas.
- C. **Precautions and Cooperation**
  - 1) Notify the Owner 7 days in advance before any utility (natural gas, water, electricity, or sewer) is to be interrupted.
  - 2) With proper notification, interruption in utilities up to 4 hours will be permitted without special provisions by the Contractor. \*If any interruption of a utility exceeds 4 hours the Contractor must make arrangements for temporary alternate utility service.
  - 3) Interruption of utilities must be coordinated with the Owner with changeovers and out of service at night. Weekend and evening changeovers of utilities shall occur with no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 4) Openings to be cut in existing exterior walls must be saw cut. No jackhammer work will be permitted. Notify the Owner 7 days in advance of cutting of exterior walls.

15. TIME EXTENSIONS ADVERSE WEATHER

- A. The Contractor shall comply with all provisions of the General Conditions in submitting any request for extension of Contract Time due to unusually severe weather.
- B. Definitions:
1. Adverse Weather - Atmospheric conditions at a definite time and place which are unfavorable to construction activities.
  2. Unusually Severe Weather - Weather which is more severe than the adverse weather anticipated for the season, location, or activity involved.
- C. In order for any request of time extension due to unusually severe weather to be valid, the Contractor must document both of the following conditions.
1. The weather experienced at the project site during the Contract period is more severe than the adverse weather anticipated for the project location during any given month.
  2. The unusually severe weather actually caused a delay to the completion of the project. The delay must be beyond the control and without fault or negligence by the Contractor.
- D. The following schedule of monthly anticipated adverse weather delays will constitute the baseline for monthly weather time evaluations. The Contractor's Progress Schedule must reflect these anticipated adverse weather delays in all weather affected activities:  
MONTHLY ANTICIPATED ADVERSE WEATHER DELAY WORK DAYS BASED ON FIVE (5) DAY WORK WEEK.

<u>JAN</u>	<u>FEB</u>	<u>MAR</u>	<u>APR</u>	<u>MAY</u>	<u>JUN</u>	<u>JUL</u>	<u>AUG</u>	<u>SEP</u>	<u>OCT</u>	<u>NOV</u>	<u>DEC</u>
5	4	7	8	10	9	8	8	7	5	4	4

END OF SECTION 01010

## SECTION 01019

### SPECIAL PROVISIONS

1. **GENERAL**  
Should conflict occur between these Special Provisions and the General Conditions, the requirements of the Special Provisions shall take precedence.
2. **TIME OF CONSTRUCTION – PENALTY CLAUSE**
  - a. Time of Construction - The Contractor will commence the work within ten (10) days after the Architect shall have given the Contractor written notice to commence construction to the satisfaction of the Owner within the calendar days as Contractor so stated in their Bid Form. The time for completion herein set forth shall be extended for the period of any reasonable delay which is due exclusively to causes beyond the control and without the fault of the Contractor, including acts of God, fires, floods, and direction by the Architect. It is impractical to perform any operation of construction and acts of omissions of the Owner with respect to matters for which Owner is solely responsible; provided, however, that no such extension of time for completion shall be granted the Contractor, unless within ten (10) days after the happening of any event relied upon by the Contractor for such extension of time, the Contractor shall have made a request, therefore, in writing to the Architect. Extended time will be submitted with pay request for Owner's approval.
  - b. Penalty Clause - The time of completion of the construction of the project is of the essence of this Contract. Should the Contractor neglect, refuse, or fail to complete the project (100%) within the time herein agreed upon, after giving effect to extensions of time, if any, herein provided; the Owner shall have the right to deduct from and retain out of such money, which may then be due or which may become due and payable to the Contractor, the sum of THREE HUNDRED DOLLARS (\$300.00) per day for each and every day that such construction is delayed in its completion beyond the specified time. If the amount due and to become due from the Contractor to the Owner is insufficient to pay in full any such liquidated damages, the Contractor shall pay to the Owner the amount necessary to effect such payment in full; provided, however, that the Owner shall promptly notify the Contractor in writing of the manner in which the amount retained, deducted or claimed. No award is given to the Contractor for early completion.
  - c. Joint Responsibility - The General Contractor and/or Subcontractors causing the delay in completion of the project shall be responsible for payment of the penalty. In no case shall the total penalty for all contracts exceed the sum of daily penalty multiplied by the number of days of delay in completion.
3. **ALTERNATES** - Refer to Alternate Schedule, Section 01030
  - a. Alternates specified are not a part of Base Bid, but are Alternates to same, their acceptance being at option of Owner.
4. **CASH ALLOWANCES**
  - a. Costs included in Allowances: Cost of Product to Contractor or Subcontractor, less applicable trade discounts, delivery to site, except those taxes saved by use of Owner's tax exemption.
  - b. Costs Not Included in the Allowance: Fees for overhead and profit, product handling at the site, including unloading, uncrating, and storage; protection of Products from elements and from damage and labor for installation and finishing.
  - c. Architect Responsibilities:
    1. Consult with Contractor in consideration and selection of Products, suppliers and installers.
    2. Select Products in consultation with Owner and transmit decision to Contractor.
    3. Prepare Proposal Requests and Change Orders.
  - d. Contractor Responsibilities:
    1. Assist Architect/Engineer in selection of Products, suppliers and installers.
    2. Obtain proposals from suppliers and installers and offer recommendations.
    3. On notification of selection by Architect, execute purchase agreement with designated supplier and installer.
    4. Arrange for and process shop drawings, product data, and samples. Arrange for delivery.
    5. Promptly inspect Products upon delivery for completeness, damage, and defects. Submit claims for transportation damage.
    6. Product handling at the site, including unloading, uncrating and storage, protection of Products from elements and from damage and labor for installation and finishing.
    7. The Contractor shall include in their Bid all fees for all cash allowances.
  - e. Funds will be drawn from Cash Allowances only by written authorization from Owner.

- f. Cash Allowances – **Base Bid:**
1. Section 08710 Door Hardware. Note this allowance is to include hardware for doors and frames, excluding aluminum storefront. **Amount \$40,000.00.**
  2. Section 10850 Building Specialties – Interior Signage. **Amount of \$500.00**
  3. Inspection and Testing Allowance – The contractor shall include in his bid, an allowance of **\$10,000.00** for direct cost of testing by the approved testing companies. The contractor shall bear all costs associated with coordination, administration scheduling, and supervision of testing companies, and include those costs in his bid.
  4. Contingency Allowance – In addition to the specification sections listed above, include an allowance of **\$40,000.00** in the general bid and contract amount to be included in the contractors base bid. This allowance shall be used at the sole discretion of the Architect and/or Owner specifically for hidden conditions discovered in the field or on site, the addition of labor, parts and/or materials required for timely completion in conjunction with the general scope of work.
5. ENUMERATION OF DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS
- a. Correlation. Accompanying these Specifications are the Drawings, which jointly with these Specifications, are intended to explain each other and describe and coordinate the work to be performed under the Contract.
  - b. Verification of Documents. Before submitting his bid, each Bidder shall check his set(s) of Drawings and Specifications and advise the Architect if any sheets are missing.
  - c. Specifications Explanations. For convenience of reference, the Specifications are separated into Titled Divisions and Sections. Such separation shall not, however, operate to make the Architect an arbiter to establish limits between the Contractor and Subcontractor or Sub-Subcontractor.
  - d. Drawings. Refer to LIST OF DRAWINGS.
  - e. Specifications. Refer to TABLE OF CONTENTS.
6. WARRANTIES
- Before being eligible for final payment, Contractor shall deliver to Owner, through Architect, all special warranties specified for materials, equipment and installation.
7. OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS
- Before being eligible for final payment, Contractor shall deliver to Owner, through Architect, two (2) jump drives of manufacturer's operating instructions, one (1) complete set of shop drawings on each piece of equipment, and such framed instructions as instructed.
8. AS-BUILT DRAWINGS
- Before being eligible for final payment, the Electrical and Mechanical Contractors shall prepare and deliver to Owner, through Architect, one (1) pdf set of AS-BUILT DRAWINGS on O&M jump drives. These drawings shall show the correct location of every item of equipment, piping, conduit, panel boards, ductwork, switches, valves, etc.
9. CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE
- Upon completion of project, Contractor is to furnish written Certification to the Architect that he has complied with every paragraph of the Specifications and Drawings.
10. CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF RELEASE OF LIENS
- Upon completion of project, Contractor shall submit to Owner a signed Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens prior to final payment.
11. CONTRACTOR'S MONTHLY APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT FORM
- Contractor's monthly Application for Payment shall be submitted as per General Conditions. AIA Document G702, Application and Certificate for Payment is approved and acceptable.
12. DOCUMENTS FURNISHED CONTRACTORS
- The General Contractor will be furnished, free of charge, the following working drawings and specifications, including modifications for construction of the project - **14 sets.** The General Contractor will be responsible for distribution of these sets to the Subcontractors and suppliers. The Contractor shall pay the actual cost of reproduction and postage for all additional sets requested by them.

14. TESTING AND INSPECTIONS

- a. The General Contractor shall be responsible for coordination and scheduling of all inspections and testing as required by the Contract documents. The Contractor shall include a testing and inspection allowance in his bid as described in paragraph 5.f.3 of this section. The Contractor shall pay all costs associated with testing and all direct costs from the testing/inspection company and shall be deducted from the testing and inspection allowance. Re-testing/inspection costs associated with incorrect or defective work shall be paid by the Contractor and such costs are not to be deducted from the allowance.
- b. All sampling and testing procedures shall be performed by the inspection company responsible for inspection and testing.

13. SALES TAX EXEMPTIONS

- a. Materials and equipment incorporated into this project **are not exempt** from the payment of sales tax under the laws of the State of Kansas and such sales tax **shall be included in the Bid of the Bidder.**

END OF SECTION 01019





CONTRACTOR'S REQUEST FOR INFORMATION

TO:

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION NO. \_\_\_\_\_

REQUESTED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

RESPONSE REQUIRED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

RE:

SPECIFICATION REFERENCE: \_\_\_\_\_

DRAWING REFERENCE: \_\_\_\_\_

SUBJECT: DISCREPANCY: \_\_\_\_\_ CLARIFICATION: \_\_\_\_\_ OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_

REQUEST:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

SIGNED: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

ARCHITECT'S RESPONSE: This information is provided as an interpretation of the Contract Documents for implementation. It shall not be authorization for change to the Contract Sum or the Contract Completion Time. Should this information result in a claim for a change in the Contract Sum or Contract Completion Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect within twenty (20) calendar days of receipt.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

Response Distribution  
Original - Contractor

SIGNED: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

## SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

ONE ITEM PER FORM  
FILL IN ALL BLANKS

Project: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

We hereby submit for your review the following substitution for the following specified material for the above project:

<u>Section</u>	<u>Page</u>	<u>Paragraph</u>	<u>Specified Material</u>
_____	_____	_____	_____

### PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION:

Attach complete technical data, including laboratory tests, if applicable. Include complete information on changes to Drawings and/or Specifications which proposed substitution will require for its proper installation.

- A. Does the Substitution effect dimensions shown on Drawings in any way?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- B. Will the undersigned pay for any changes to the building design, including engineering and detailing costs caused by the requested substitution?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- C. What effect does substitution have on schedule or other trades?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- D. What effect does substitution have on cost?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- E. Differences between proposed substitution and specified items are:  
\_\_\_\_\_ Same \_\_\_\_\_ Different (Explain)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- F. Contractor represents that he has investigated the proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds the quality of the specified product.

SUBMITTED BY:

\_\_\_\_\_ Accepted  
\_\_\_\_\_ Not Accepted

\_\_\_\_\_ Accepted as Noted  
\_\_\_\_\_ Received Too Late

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Firm)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(By)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Telephone)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Remarks)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

FINAL LIEN WAIVER AND RELEASE

Reference that certain Agreement between \_\_\_\_\_, as Contractor, and \_\_\_\_\_ as Owner, dated \_\_\_\_\_, on the project known as \_\_\_\_\_ located at \_\_\_\_\_ for work to be performed by said Contractor.

Reference also that certain invoice of Contractor to said Owner in the Amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_ for work, labor and materials installed in or furnished for said project by and through \_\_\_\_\_.

The receipt by Contractor of Owner's remittance for the amount said invoice, contingent upon the final clearance and payment of said remittance, shall constitute payment for the full contract amount, including change orders and all other claims or demands of any nature whatsoever which Contractor has or may have in connection with the Project or Contract referenced herein, of \$\_\_\_\_\_, for which Contractor (a) agrees to and does hereby waive and release said property, project and the Owner and all bond or payment sureties and guarantors from; and (b) does hereby agree to protect, indemnify, defend and hold harmless said property, project, Owner, sureties and guarantors against;

- (1) any and all liens, statutory or otherwise, and
- (2) any or all obligations under any bond or guaranty for payment furnished by or to said Owner, whether pursuant to agreement or requirement of law, and
- (3) any and all other claims whatsoever, statutory or otherwise,

for any and all work, labor and materials furnished by or through said Contractor, its subcontractors and material suppliers for the entirety of said project.

The remittance of the Owner, identified as payment of said above invoice and endorsed by Contractor and marked "paid" or otherwise canceled by the bank against which said remittance was drawn shall constitute conclusive proof that said invoice was paid and the payment thereof was received by the Contractor, and thereupon, this final lien waiver shall become effective automatically and without requirement of any further act, acknowledgment or receipt of the part of said Contractor.

Contractor does further warrant that Contractor has not and will not assign its claims for payment nor its right to perfect a lien against said property and project, and the undersigned representative of the contractor has the right to execute this waiver and release thereof.

The undersigned representative of Contractor does hereby certify under oath that he is fully authorized and empowered to execute this instrument for and in behalf of said Contractor and to bind them hereto and does in fact so execute this final lien release.

Dated this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Subscribed and affirmed to before me, the undersigned Notary Public within and for the State of \_\_\_\_\_ and the County of \_\_\_\_\_, this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, in the City of \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public within and for said  
County and State



SECTION 01310  
PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Coordination Drawings.
  - 2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
  - 3. Project meetings.
  - 4. Requests for Interpretation (RFIs).
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility will be assigned to a specific contractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Contractor seeking interpretation or clarification of the Contract Documents.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
- B. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
  - 4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair of all components, including mechanical and electrical.
- C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.
  - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7. Project closeout activities.
  - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
  - 9. Project closeout activities.
- E. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials.
  - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. Refer to other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities.
  - 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Coordination Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
    - b. Indicate required installation sequences.
    - c. Indicate dimensions shown on the Contract Drawings and make specific note of dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect for resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

## 1.6 ADMINISTRATIVE AND SUPERVISORY PERSONNEL

- A. General: In addition to Project superintendent, provide other administrative and supervisory personnel as required for proper performance of the Work.

## 1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
  - 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  - 3. Minutes: Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within **three** days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference (**By Architect**): Schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than **15** days after execution of the Agreement. Hold the conference at Project site or another convenient location. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
  - 1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Tentative construction schedule.
    - b. Phasing.
    - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
    - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - f. Procedures for RFIs.
    - g. Procedures for and inspecting.
    - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - i. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - j. Submittal procedures.
    - k. LEED requirements.
    - l. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - m. Use of the premises and existing building.
    - n. Work restrictions.
    - o. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - p. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - q. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - r. Parking availability.
    - s. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - t. Equipment deliveries and priorities.



- u. First aid.
- v. Security.
- w. Progress cleaning.
- x. Working hours.

- C. Progress Meetings (**By Architect**): Conduct progress meetings at **monthly** intervals. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site utilization.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Work hours.
      - 10) Hazards and risks.
      - 11) Progress cleaning.
      - 12) Quality and work standards.
      - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 14) Field observations.
      - 15) RFIs.
      - 16) Status of proposal requests.
      - 17) Pending changes.
      - 18) Status of Change Orders.
      - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
      - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
  3. Minutes: Contractor shall record the meeting minutes.
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present.
    - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Construction Schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- D. Coordination Meetings: **General Contractor shall conduct** Project coordination meetings with their subcontractors at **weekly** intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and pre-installation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine

how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

- b. Schedule Updating: Revise Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
- c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
  - 1) Interface requirements.
  - 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Status of submittals.
  - 4) Deliveries.
  - 5) Off-site fabrication.
  - 6) Access.
  - 7) Site utilization.
  - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 9) Work hours.
  - 10) Hazards and risks.
  - 11) Progress cleaning.
  - 12) Quality and work standards.
  - 13) Change Orders.
3. Reporting: Contractor shall record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

#### 1.8 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFIs)

- A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for interpretation of the Contract Documents, and if not possible to request interpretation at Project meeting, prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
  1. RFIs shall originate with Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than Contractor will be returned with no response.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing interpretation and the following:
  1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of Contractor.
  4. Name of Architect.
  5. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  6. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  7. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  8. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  9. Contractor's suggested solution(s). If Contractor's solution(s) impact the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  10. Contractor's signature.
  11. Attachments: Include drawings, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Supplementary drawings prepared by Contractor shall include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments.
- C. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and return it. Allow **seven** working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
  1. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will start again.
  2. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Division 1 Section "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within **7** days of receipt of the RFI response.
- D. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within **seven** days if Contractor disagrees with response.

- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log monthly:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
  8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01310



## SECTION 01330

### SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- B. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 for list of submittals and time requirements for scheduled performance of related construction activities.
- C. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  - 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  - 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal.
  - 5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
  - 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  - 2. Provide a space approximately on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect
  - 3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name and address of Contractor.
    - e. Name and address of subcontractor.
    - f. Name and address of supplier.
    - g. Name of manufacturer.
    - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.

- j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  - l. Other necessary identification.
- E. Deviations: Highlight or otherwise specifically identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- F. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
- G. Transmittal: Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Contractor.
  - 1. Transmittal Form: Use General Contractor's standard transmittal form
  - 2. Transmittal Form: Provide locations on form for the following information:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Destination (To:).
    - d. Source (From:).
    - e. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
    - f. Category and type of submittal.
    - g. Submittal purpose and description.
    - h. Specification Section number and title.
    - i. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - j. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
    - k. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
    - l. Remarks.
    - m. Signature of transmitter.
  - 3. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same label information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
  - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with Architect's and/or Consultant's stamp indicating approval action.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating review and approval by Architect and/or Consultant.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Prepare and submit Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - d. Standard color charts.
    - e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - g. Printed performance curves.
    - h. Operational range diagrams.
    - i. Mill reports.
    - j. Standard product operation and maintenance manuals.



- k. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
  - l. Testing by recognized testing agency.
  - m. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
  - n. Notation of coordination requirements.
- 4. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
- 5. Number of Copies: **Submit one (1) electronic copy of Product Data, unless otherwise indicated.**
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products.
    - c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    - f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
    - g. Templates and patterns.
    - h. Schedules.
    - i. Design calculations.
    - j. Compliance with specified standards.
    - k. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - l. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - m. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - n. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
    - o. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 2. Sheet Size (**For O&M Manuals Only**): Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 40 inches.  
 Number of Copies: **Submit one (1) electronic copy of each submittal.** Submit additional printed copies where copies are required for operation and maintenance manuals.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  - 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  - 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
  - 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit two full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  - 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit two sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample set.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule or List: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product.
  - 2. Number and name of room or space.
  - 3. Location within room or space.
  - 4. Number of Copies: Submit three copies of product schedule or list, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- G. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- H. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- I. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- J. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
  - 4. Number of Copies: Submit two copies of subcontractor list, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit two copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
  - 3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1
- B. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- D. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification (WPS) and Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- F. Installer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- G. Manufacturer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- H. Product Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- I. Material Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- J. Material Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form and indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- K. Product Test Reports: Prepare written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- L. Research/Evaluation Reports: Prepare written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
  - 2. Date of evaluation.
  - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
  - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - 5. Description of product.
  - 6. Test procedures and results.
  - 7. Limitations of use.
- M. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- N. Preconstruction Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form and indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- O. Compatibility Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form and indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- P. Field Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Maintenance Data: Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- R. Design Data: Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.
- S. Manufacturer's Instructions: Prepare written or published information that documents manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer. Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Preparation of substrates.
  - 2. Required substrate tolerances.
  - 3. Sequence of installation or erection.
  - 4. Required installation tolerances.
  - 5. Required adjustments.
  - 6. Recommendations for cleaning and protection.
- T. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections. Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- U. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits of coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.
- V. Construction Photographs and Videotapes: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1.
- W. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs): Submit information directly to Owner; do not submit to Architect.

## 2.3 DELEGATED DESIGN

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit three copies of a statement, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### 3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered non-responsive, and will be returned without review.

END OF SECTION 01330

## SECTION 01500

### TEMPORARY FACILITIES

#### 1. GENERAL

Should conflict occur between the Temporary Facilities and the General Conditions, the requirements of this Section take precedence.

#### 2. TEMPORARY HEAT

- a. The General Contractor shall provide heat, fuel and services as necessary to protect all work and materials against injury from dampness and cold until final acceptance of all work and material in the Contract, unless the building or buildings are fully occupied by the Owner prior to such acceptance, in which case, the Owner shall assume all expenses of heating from date of occupancy. The General Contractor shall provide heat as follows:
  - 1) At all times during the placing, setting and curing of concrete, provide sufficient heat to insure the heating of the spaces involved to not less than 50° F.
  - 2) From the beginning of the application of gypsum board taping and during the setting and curing period, provide sufficient heat to produce a temperature in the spaces involved of not less than 50° F.
  - 3) For a period of ten (10) days previous to the placing of interior wood finish and throughout the placing of this and other interior finishing, varnishing, painting, etc., and until final acceptance of the work or until full occupancy by the Owner, provide sufficient heat to produce a temperature of not less than 70° F. Heating Subcontractor shall set such necessary temporary radiation as may be required.
  - 4) Mechanical Subcontractor is responsible to provide temporary heating.
  - 5) **Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system(s) prior to substantial completion; provide filters at air grilles in system. Before Substantial Completion, all units and ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned and restored to original or new condition. Manufacturer's warranties on new equipment will not begin until substantial completion and cleaning of units and duct work has been performed.**

#### 3. TEMPORARY FIELD OFFICES (CONTRACTORS OPTION)

- a. General Contractor shall provide and maintain in good condition, a painted weatherproof field office (adequate size trailer acceptable) for use of General Contractor and Architect's representative. Provide such building with heat, electric lights, telephone, locked doors, windows, table, and rack for Drawings. Building to remain property of General Contractor.
- b. Electrical and Mechanical Subcontractors shall maintain similar field office as needed, meeting requirements of previous paragraph, except provisions for Architect's representative not needed.

#### 4. TEMPORARY ENCLOSURES

General Contractor to provide:

- a. Temporary weathertight enclosures for all exterior openings as soon as possible as walls and roofs are built to protect work from weather. Temporary exterior doors equipped with padlocks.
- b. In cold weather, provide additional precautions necessary, including heat at such openings to protect building and contents.

#### 5. TEMPORARY STORAGE

- a. The Contractor shall provide and maintain on the premises watertight storage enclosures for storage of all materials which may be damaged by weather. These enclosures shall have floors raised above the ground.

#### 6. TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION ITEMS

General Contractor shall furnish necessary temporary stairs, chutes, runways, scaffolds, ladders, and hoist.

#### 7. TEMPORARY TOILET ACCOMMODATIONS

- a. The General Contractor shall provide for the use of all workmen, in accordance with local ordinances, ample temporary sanitary toilet accommodations and keep such clean and free from flies. Prior to completion of the Contract, all connections and appliances connected with same will be removed and the premises left perfectly clean.

#### 8. TEMPORARY TELEPHONE

The General Contractor shall install at his own expense, a job telephone, and shall pay for all local calls. All long distance calls shall be paid by party making the call.

9. TEMPORARY LIGHT, POWER, AND GAS
  - a. General Contractor shall arrange for temporary and permanent services, pay for all expenses therewith and bring services to building and run extensions to locations necessary for operations.
  - b. Permit other Subcontractors to use same. Other Subcontractors requiring additional extensions, make and remove same at their expense.
  - c. Owner shall pay for all electricity and gas consumed.
10. WATER FOR CONSTRUCTION

The Contractor shall be responsible to provide temporary and permanent water service. Owner will pay for all water consumed.
11. PORTABLE SITE FENCING

The contractor shall be responsible to install a 72" tall chain link site enclosure fence around entire site/property. Contractor shall comply with the City of Dodge City requirements regarding signage, barricades, lighting, access, etc., during construction. Do not block alley access.
12. TRASH DUMPSTER(S)

Contractor shall provide dumpster(s) for construction debris.

END OF SECTION 01500

## SECTION 01700

### PROJECT CLOSEOUT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Related Documents
- B. Summary
- C. Completion of a Building and/or Phase
- D. Final Completion and Final Payment
- E. Record Document Submittals
- F. Starting Systems
- G. Operating and Maintenance Instructions
- H. Final Cleaning

##### 1.02 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division - 1 Specification sections, apply to this section.

##### 1.03 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for project closeout, including but not limited to:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Project record document submittal.
  - 3. Operating and maintenance manual submittal.
  - 4. Submittal of warranties.
  - 5. Final cleaning.
  - 6. Record vellum drawings.
- B. Closeout requirements for specific construction activities are include in the appropriate Sections in Divisions 2 through 33.

##### 1.04 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. Substantial completion
  - 1. The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall carefully and regularly check their work for conformance with the Contract Documents as the work is being done. Unsatisfactory work shall be corrected as the work progresses and not be permitted to remain and become a part of the Punch List.
  - 2. The Contractor shall conduct a pre-punch list inspection. The written pre-punch list shall be distributed to affected subcontractors, Architect and Owner's Representative. The Contractor shall advise the Architect in writing upon completion of the pre-punch list. This notification shall so serve to notify the Architect that the Work is ready for the punch list inspection.
  - 3. The Architect shall make arrangements for his Punch List Inspection at the earliest possible date following Contractor notification of completion of the pre-punch list. Transmittal of the Punch List to the Contractor shall set the date for a Re-inspection prior to issuance of a Certificate of Substantial Completion. Upon receipt of the Punch List, the Contractor shall within seven (7) days bring to the attention of the Architect in writing any questions that he or any of his Subcontractors may have concerning the requirements of the Punch List.
  - 4. When advised by the Contractor that the Punch List items have been completed, the Architect shall conduct a Re-inspection with the Contractor, any needed Subcontractors (and the Owner's Representative where applicable) to determine whether the Certificate of Substantial Completion can be issued. A Certificate of Substantial Completion will only be issued after Codes Administration authorities' document final approval of the building or phase. If the first re-inspection requested by the contractor and performed by the architect/engineer determines that punch list items remain incomplete, and the outstanding items have not been previously questioned by the contractor as required in Paragraph 3 above, then, all subsequent re-inspections by the architect will be paid for by the Contractor.
  - 5. When issued, the Certificate of Substantial Completion shall name the date, triggering the beginning of the warranty period (with any items to have a later starting date specifically noted). The Certificate shall also have attached to it the uncompleted Punch List items, and shall name the date for their Final Completion. The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall also state the responsibilities of the Owner and the Contractor for maintenance, heat, utilities, insurance, and building security.



6. Acknowledgment of the Date of Substantial Completion by the signature of all parties on the Certificate implies possession of the premises by the Owner, and completion of incomplete Punch List items by the Contractor and the Subcontractors, at the Owner's convenience. The Owner shall cooperate in permitting the Contractor access to the work for the completion of Punch List items.
7. A Certificate of Substantial Completion for the Work, or portion of Work, as applicable, will only be issued after the requirements for the demonstration and instruction of operation and maintenance procedures as defined elsewhere by the Contract Documents, to the Owner's personnel have been satisfied by the Contractor.

B. Final Completion

1. Submit executed warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance agreements, inspection certificates and similar required documentation for specific units of work, enabling Owner's unrestricted occupancy and use.
2. Submit maintenance manuals (**two electronic copies on jump drives**), tools, keys, spare parts, extra stock materials.
3. Complete instruction of Owner's operating personnel with start-up of all systems.
4. Complete final cleaning and remove temporary facilities.  
(Final cleaning - at closeout time of each building, clean, reclean entire work to normal level for "first class" maintenance/cleaning of building projects of a similar nature. Remove non-permanent protection and labels, polish glass, clean exposed finishes, touch-up minor finish damage, clean or replace filters of mechanical systems, remove debris and broom clean non-occupied spaces, sanitize plumbing/food service facilities, clean light fixtures and replace burned-out/dimmed lamps, sweep and wash paved areas, police yards and grounds, and perform similar cleanup operations needed to produce a "clean" condition as judged by Architect/Engineer.)
5. All punch list work must be completed, reviewed, and accepted by the Architect/Engineer.

1.05 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT

- A. Provide submittals to Architect that are required by governing or other authorities. Confirm that all submittals required by the construction documents have been transmitted.
- B. Final Completion: For the purpose of determining a date at which the project is finished, Final Completion may be defined to include, but is not limited to:
  1. Substantial Completion.
  2. Submission and acceptance by the Architect of Project Record Drawings.
  3. Operation and Maintenance Data (including all air and water balance reports). **Two electronic copies on jump drives.**
  4. All applicable Owner training sessions with meeting notes distributed (video tapes, if applicable).
  5. Final cleaning.
  6. Adjusting (hardware, HVAC, etc.).
  7. Warranties submitted by General Contractor and accepted by Architect.
  8. Spare parts and maintenance materials turned over to proper District personnel.
  9. All punch list work completed, reviewed, and accepted by the Architect.

All of the above items are as required by individual specification requirements as found in the Contract Documents. These individual requirements shall take precedence over this definition if any conflict should arise.
- C. Upon written notice by the Contractor that the Re-inspection Punch List items are completed, the Architect shall verify this by inspection and shall issue to the Owner a final Certificate of Payment stating that, to the best of their knowledge, information and belief, the Work has been completed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents, and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor, and noted in said final Certificate of Payment, is due and payable. The Owner shall endeavor to make payments within thirty (30) days.

1.06 RECORD DOCUMENT SUBMITTAL

- A. General: Do not use record documents for construction purposes; protect from deterioration and loss in a secure, fire-resistive location; provide access to record documents for the Architect's reference during normal working hours.
- B. Record Drawings: A set of blue- or black-line drawings of the original bidding documents will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor for the following use:
  1. If the Contractor elects to vary the work from the Contract Documents, and secures prior approval from the Architect, he shall record in a neat, readable manner, all such variances on the blue-or black-line drawings furnished.

2. For plumbing; heating; ventilating, and air-conditioning; electrical and fire protection work, Record Document Drawings shall be maintained by the Contractor as the work progresses and as follows:
  - a. All deviations from the sizes, locations, and from all other features of all installations showing the Contract Documents shall be recorded.
  - b. In addition it shall be possible, using these Drawings, to correctly and easily locate, identify and establish sizes of piping, direction, etc., as well as all other features of work which will be concealed.
    - 1) Locations of underground work shall be established by dimensions to column lines or walls, by locating all turns, etc., and by properly referenced centerline or invert elevations and rates of fall.
    - 2) For work concealed in the building, sufficient information shall be given so it can be located with reasonable accuracy and ease. In some cases this may be by dimension, in others, it may be sufficient to illustrate the work on the drawings in relation to the spaces in the building near which it was actually installed. Architect's decision in this matter shall be final.
3. Blue- or Black-Line Record Document Drawings shall be kept up-to-date during the entire course of the work and shall be available upon request for examination by the Architect, and, when necessary, to establish clearances for other parts of the Work.
4. The following requirements apply to all Record Document Drawings:
  - a. They shall be maintained at the Contractor's expense.
  - b. All such Drawings shall be done carefully and neatly by a competent draftsman and in an approved form.
  - c. Additional drawings shall be provided as necessary for clarification.
  - d. The Record Document Drawings (both blue- or black-line and reproducible) shall be returned to the Architect upon completion of the work and are subject to the approval of the Architect.
  - e. Delete Architect title block and seal from Record Document Drawings.
- C. Record Specifications: Maintain one complete copy of the Project Manual, including addenda, and one copy of other written construction documents such as Change Orders and modifications. Give particular attention to substitutions, selection of options and similar information on elements that are concealed or cannot otherwise be readily discerned later by direct observation. Note related record drawing information and Product Data.
  1. Legibly mark and record at each Product section description of actual Products installed, including the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's product name and product model number.
    - b. Product substitutions or alternates utilized.
    - c. Changes made by Addenda and Modifications.
  2. Upon completion of the Work, submit record Specifications to the Architect for the Owner's records.
  3. Record Project Manual shall be maintained at the Contractor's expense.
  4. Record Project Manual shall be maintained in a neat, readable manner. Contract work variations shall be recorded in the correct corresponding Technical Section of the Project Manual.
  5. Delete Architect seal from Record Project Manual.
- D. Record Shop Drawings: Maintain a clean, undamaged set of blue or black line white-prints of Shop Drawings as finally approved. Mark the set to show the actual installation where the installation varies substantially from the Work as originally shown. Mark drawings accurately; record a cross-reference at the corresponding location on the Contract Drawings. Give particular attention to concealed elements that would be difficult to measure and record at a later date.
  1. Mark record sets with red erasable pencil; use other colors to distinguish between variations in separate categories of the Work.
  2. Mark new information that is important to the Owner, but was not shown on Shop Drawings.
  3. Note related Change Order numbers where applicable.
  4. Organize record shop drawing sheets into manageable sets, bind with durable paper cover sheets, and print suitable titles, dates and other identification on the cover of each set.
- E. Record Product Data: maintain one copy of each Product Data submittal. Mark these documents to show significant variations in actual Work performed in comparison with information submitted. Include variations in products delivered to the site, and from the manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations. Give particular attention to concealed products and portions of the Work which cannot otherwise be readily discerned later by direct observation. Note related Change Orders and mark-up of record drawings and Specifications.
  1. Upon completion of mark-ups, submit complete set of record Product Data to the Architect for

the Owner's records.

- F. Record Documents and Shop Drawings: Contractor to supply one complete set of approved shop drawings. Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
  - 1. Measured depths of foundations in relation to fine (main) floor datum.
  - 2. Measured horizontal and vertical locations of underground utilities and appurtenance, referenced to permanent surface improvements.
  - 3. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenance concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
  - 4. Field changes of dimension and detail.
  - 5. Details not on original Contract Drawings.
- G. Record Sample Submitted: Immediately prior to the date or dates of Substantial Completion, the Contractor will meet at the site with the Architect and the Owner's personnel to determine which of the submitted Samples that have been maintained during progress of the Work or to be transmitted to the Owner for record purposes. Comply with delivery to the Owner's Sample storage area.
- H. Miscellaneous Record Submittal: Refer to other Specification Sections for requirements of miscellaneous record-keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Immediately prior to the date or dates of Substantial Completion, complete miscellaneous records and place in good order, properly identified and bound or filed, ready for continued use and reference. Submit to the Architect for the Owner's records.
- I. Maintenance Manuals: Organize operating and maintenance data into suitable sets of manageable size. Submit three sets prior to final inspection. Bind properly indexed data in individual heavy-duty 3-inch, 3-ring vinyl-covered binders, 8-1/2 x 11 inch text page format, with pocket folders for folded sheet information. Also provide one (1) cd.
  - 1. Prepare binder covers with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS", title of project, and subject matter of binder when multiple binders are required.
  - 2. Internally subdivide the binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized as described below; with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.
  - 3. Contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each Product or system description identified.
  - 4. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Architect/Engineer, Contractor, Subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers where they can be reached for emergency service at all times, including nights, weekends, and holidays.
  - 5. Part 2: Operation and maintenance instructions, arranged by system and subdivided by specification section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Identify the following:
    - a. Significant design criteria.
    - b. List of equipment.
    - c. Parts list for each component.
    - d. Operating instructions.
    - e. Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.
    - f. Maintenance instructions for special finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials and special precautions identifying detrimental agents.
    - g. Emergency instructions.
    - h. Spare parts list.
    - i. Wiring diagrams.
    - j. Recommended "turn around" cycles.
    - k. Inspection procedures.
  - 6. Part 3: Project documents and certificates, including the following:
    - a. Shop drawings and product data.
    - b. Air and water balance reports.
    - c. Certificates.
    - d. Photocopies of warranties and bonds.
  - 7. Submit one copy of completed volumes in final form 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be returned after final inspection, with Architect comments. Revise content of documents as required prior to final submittal.
  - 8. Submit final volumes revised, within ten days after final inspection.
- J. Record reproducible vellum drawings. Contractor shall submit 1 copy of all record contract drawings to the Owner in the form of reproducible vellum sheets.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 STARTING SYSTEMS

- A. Coordinate schedule of start-up of various equipment and systems.
- B. Notify Architect, Owner, and Program Manager seven days prior to start-up of each item.
- C. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, or other conditions which may cause damage.
- D. Verify that tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- E. Verify wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- F. Execute start-up under supervision of responsible manufacturer's representative (Contractors' personnel) in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- G. When specified in individual specification Sections, require manufacturer to provide authorized representative to be present at site to inspect, check and approve equipment or system installation prior to start-up, and to supervise placing equipment or system in operation.
- H. Submit a written report in accordance with Section 01400 that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

### 3.02 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

- A. General: Arrange for each installer of equipment that requires regular maintenance to meet with the Owner's personnel to provide instruction in proper operation and maintenance. If installers are not experienced in procedures, provide instruction by manufacture's representatives. Include a detailed review of the following items:
  - 1. Maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Record documents.
  - 3. Spare parts and materials.
  - 4. Tools.
  - 5. Lubricants.
  - 6. Fuels.
  - 7. Identification systems.
  - 8. Control sequences.
  - 9. Hazards.
  - 10. Cleaning.
  - 11. Warranties and bonds.
  - 12. Maintenance agreements and similar continuing commitments.
- B. As part of instruction for operating equipment, demonstrate the following procedures:
  - 1. Start-up.
  - 2. Shutdown.
  - 3. Emergency operations.
  - 4. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - 5. Safety procedures.
  - 6. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
  - 7. Effective energy utilization.

### 3.03 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: General cleaning during construction is required by the General Provisions and Covenants and included in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities".
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to the condition expected in a normal, commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for Certification of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Remove labels that are not permanent labels.
    - b. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compound and other substances that are noticeable vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials.
    - c. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finished to a dust-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Restore reflective surfaces to their original reflective condition. Leave concrete floors broom clean. Vacuum carpeted surfaces.

- d. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment. Remove excess lubrication and other substances. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition. Clean light fixtures and lamps.
- C. Removal of Protection: Remove temporary protection and facilities installed for protection of the Work during construction.
- D. Compliance: Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or place excess materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from the site and dispose of in a lawful manner.
  - 1. Where extra materials of value remaining after completion of associated Work have become the Owner's property, arrange for disposition of these materials as directed.

END OF SECTION 01700

SECTION 01731  
CUTTING AND PATCHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
- B. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - 1. Primary operational systems and equipment.
  - 2. Air or smoke barriers.
  - 3. Fire-suppression systems.
  - 4. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
  - 5. Control systems.
  - 6. Communication systems.
  - 7. Electrical wiring systems.
- C. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch miscellaneous elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - 1. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  - 2. Membranes and flashings.
  - 3. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
  - 4. Equipment supports.
  - 5. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - 6. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
- D. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- E. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
  - 1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with in-place finishes or primers.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- B. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- D. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.

### 3.3 PERFORMANCE

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 2 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  - 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  - 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.
- D. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

END OF SECTION 01731



## SECTION 01732

### SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.

##### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.

##### 1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- C. Hazardous Materials:
  - 1. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.
- D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
- B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
- C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- E. Engage a professional engineer to survey condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective demolition operations.

##### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
- B. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.

2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
3. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
  - a. Where entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

### 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Reuse of Building Elements: Project has been designed to result in end-of-Project rates for reuse of building elements as follows. Do not demolish building elements beyond what is indicated on Drawings without Architect's approval.
- C. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
  1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.

2. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  3. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Cut concrete at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete indicated for selective demolition. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- C. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- D. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- E. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
  1. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
- F. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight.
  1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
  2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.
- G. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site, and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 01732



## SECTION 02110

### SITE CLEARING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Remove paving, curbs, and improvements.
- B. Topsoil excavation.

##### 1.02 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable local codes and ordinances for disposal of debris, burning debris on site, use of herbicides, etc.
- B. Coordinate clearing Work with utility companies as required.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that existing plant life designated to remain, is tagged, or identified.

##### 3.02 PROTECTION

- A. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain, from damage.
- B. Protect trees, plant growth, and features designated to remain, as final landscaping.
- C. Protect bench marks and existing structures from damage or displacement.

##### 3.03 CLEARING

- A. Clear areas required for access to site and execution of Work.
- B. Remove paving, curbs, and improvements designated.
- C. Remove trees and shrubs indicated. Remove stumps, root system, surface rock, and other areas indicated or implied for completion of the project.
- D. Strip and clear vegetation from areas designated to be filled, excavated, regraded, or landscaped.

##### 3.04 REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, rock, and extracted plant life from site.

##### 3.05 TOPSOIL EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate clean topsoil from areas to be further excavated, filled, re-landscaped, or regraded.
- B. Stockpile in area designated on site to depth not exceeding 8 feet. Protect from erosion. Remove excess topsoil not being reused, from site.

END OF SECTION 02110



## SECTION 02205

### SOIL MATERIALS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Subsoil and topsoil materials.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D698 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5 lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12 inch (304.8 mm) Drop.
- B. ASTM D2487 - Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Fill Material: Under slabs and within the zone of influence of foundation elements must be a material approved by a geotechnical engineer hired by the General Contractor.
- B. Fill and Backfill Material: Other areas, foundation backfill, site grading, and pavement, should be clean site material or similar borrow material, approved by a geotechnical engineer.
- C. Topsoil: Incorporate topsoil into subsoil 3"- 4". Topsoil should be blended and contain the following components by percentage:

Organic Matter:	4 - 6 %
Sand (ASTM - 300 and 75% between .25mm and .75mm):	40 - 50%
Silt:	20 - 25%
Clay:	25 - 40%

##### 2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection and testing will be performed by an independent laboratory, General Contractor shall bear all related costs under provisions of General Requirements.
- B. Tests and analysis of soil material will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D698.
- C. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest at no cost to Owner.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 STOCKPILING

- A. Stockpile materials on site at locations indicated or in areas that will not impact project completion.
- B. Stockpile in sufficient quantities to meet project schedule and requirements.
- C. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile apart to prevent mixing.
- D. Direct surface water away from stockpile site to prevent erosion or deterioration of materials.

##### 3.02 STOCKPILE CLEANUP

- A. Remove stockpile, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade site surface to prevent free standing surface water.

END OF SECTION 02205





## SECTION 02211

### ROUGH GRADING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Removal of topsoil and subsoil.
- B. Cutting, grading, filling, and rough contouring the site for site structures, building pads and paving.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil, Fill, and Structural Fill: As specified in Section 02205.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Stake and flag locations of known utilities. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain, from damage. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.
- C. Protect above and below grade utilities that remain.
- D. Protect plant life, lawns, rock outcropping and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
- E. Protect bench marks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

##### 3.03 SUBSOIL EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate subsoil from areas to be further excavated, relandscaped, or regraded.
- B. Stockpile in area designated on site to depth not exceeding 8 feet. Protect from erosion. Remove subsoil not being reused, from site.
- C. When excavating through roots, perform work by hand and cut roots with sharp axe.

##### 3.04 FILLING

- A. Fill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- B. Place fill materials on continuous layers and compact in accordance with Schedule at end of Section.
- C. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- D. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 inches in 10 ft. unless noted otherwise.
- E. Make grade changes gradual. Blend slope into level areas.
- F. Remove surplus fill materials from site.

##### 3.05 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of Subgrade: Plus or minus 1/10 foot.

##### 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D698.
- C. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.07 SCHEDULES

- A. Structural Fill: (Building and Paving)
  - 1. Fill Maximum 8 inches compacted depth.
  - 2. Compact to minimum 95 percent of maximum density.
- B. Subsoil Fill:
  - 1. Fill Maximum 8 inches compacted depth.
  - 2. Compact to minimum 90 percent of maximum density.
- C. Topsoil Fill:
  - 1. Fill Maximum 8 inches depth.

END OF SECTION 02211

## SECTION 02222

### EXCAVATING

#### PART 1 - GENERA

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavating for building foundations and footings.
- B. Excavating for slabs-on-grade, paving, landscaping.
- C. Excavating for site structures.

#### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

Not Used

\

#### PART 3 – EXECUTION

##### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain, from damage.
- C. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.
- D. Protect plant life, lawns, rock outcropping and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
- E. Protect bench marks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving and curbs from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.

##### 3.02 EXCAVATION

- A. Underpin adjacent structures which may be damaged by excavation work.
- B. Excavate subsoil required to accommodate building foundations, slabs-on-grade, paving and site structures, construction operations.
- C. Machine slope banks to angle of repose or less, until shored.
- D. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundation.
- E. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation.
- F. Hand trim excavation. Remove loose matter.
- G. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
- H. Notify Architect/Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- I. Correct areas over-excavated in accordance with Section 02223.
- J. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site and remove excess material not being reused, from site.

##### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Provide for visual inspection of bearing surfaces.

##### 3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect excavations by methods required to prevent cave-in or loose soil from falling into excavation.
- B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil adjacent to and beneath foundation, from freezing.

END OF SECTION 02222



## SECTION 02223

### BACKFILLING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building perimeter and site structure backfilling to subgrade elevations.
- B. Site filling and backfilling.
- C. Fill under slabs-on-grade, paving.
- D. Consolidation and compaction as scheduled.
- E. Fill for over-excavation.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D698 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5 lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12 inch (304.8 mm) Drop.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Fill: As specified in Section 02205.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify subdrainage, dampproofing, or waterproofing installation has been inspected and completed.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Compact subgrade to density requirements for subsequent backfill materials.
- B. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of in situ compaction. Backfill with fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- C. Scarify and proof roll subgrade surface to a depth of 8 to 12 inches to identify soft spots; fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.

##### 3.03 BACKFILLING

- A. Backfill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen, or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- C. Fill, Place and compact materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
- D. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of backfill materials to attain required compaction density. Backfill against supported foundation walls. Do not backfill against unsupported foundation walls.
- F. Backfill simultaneously on each side of unsupported foundation walls until supports are in place.
- G. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 inches in 10 ft. unless noted otherwise.
- H. Make gradual grade changes. Blend slope into level areas.
- I. Remove surplus backfill materials from site.
- J. Leave fill material stockpile areas free of excess fill materials.

##### 3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of Backfilling under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- B. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

##### 3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D698.
- C. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, and retest at no additional cost to the Owner.
- D. Proof roll compacted fill surfaces under slabs-on-grade, and paving.

3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.

3.07 SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Slab-On-Grade:
  - 1. Fill compacted to 95 percent standard density.
  - 2. Top 6" of Low Volume change material shall be crushed limestone gravel similar to KDOT AB-3, compacted to 95 percent standard density.
  - 3. 4" sand base installed over the 6" crushed concrete or AB-3.
- B. Exterior Side of Foundation Walls Retaining Walls and Over Granular Filter Material and Foundation Perimeter Drainage:
  - 1. Fill to subgrade elevation, each lift, compacted to 90 percent.
- C. Fill Under Grass Areas:
  - 1. Fill to 4 inches below finish grade.
- D. Fill Under Asphalt or Concrete Paving:
  - 1. Compact subsoil to 95 percent of its maximum dry density.
- E. Fill to Correct Overexcavation:
  - 1. Lean concrete to minimum compressive strength of 1000 psi.
  - 2. Compact approved fill to 95 percent of its maximum dry density.

END OF SECTION 02223



## SECTION 02225

### TRENCHING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavating trenches for utilities from 5 feet outside building to municipal utilities.
- B. Compacted fill from top of utility bedding to subgrade elevations to 95 percent standard density.
- C. Backfilling and compaction.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D698 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5 lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12 inch (304.8 mm) Drop.

##### 1.03 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the Work are as shown on drawings.

##### 1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate all work as required.
- B. Verify work associated with lower elevation utilities are complete before placing higher elevation utilities.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Fill: As specified in Section 02205.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Protect plant life, lawns, rock outcropping and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
- C. Protect bench marks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.
- D. Maintain and protect above and below grade utilities which are to remain.
- E. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of in situ compaction. Backfill with fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent backfill material.

##### 3.02 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate subsoil required for utilities to municipal utilities.
- B. Cut trenches sufficiently wide to enable installation and allow inspection.
- C. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- D. Hand trim excavation. Remove loose matter.
- E. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
- F. Correct areas over excavated in accordance with Section 02222.
- G. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site and remove excess material not being used, from site.

##### 3.03 BACKFILLING

- A. Backfill trenches to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials. All areas under pavement or adjacent to pavement shall be compacted to 95 percent standard density.

- B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen, or spongy subgrade surfaces.
  - C. Granular Fill: Place and compact materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
  - D. Soil Fill: Place and compact material in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
  - E. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage foundation perimeter drainage, conduit, or pipes in trench.
  - F. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
  - G. Remove surplus fill materials from site.
  - H. Leave fill material stockpile areas completely free of excess fill materials.
- 3.04 TOLERANCES
- A. Top Surface of Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- 3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D698.
  - C. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, compact, and retest at no additional cost to the owner.
- 3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK
- A. Protect or reshape and recompact fills subjected to vehicular traffic during construction.

END OF SECTION 02225

## SECTION 02260

### EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes temporary excavation support and protection systems. **Contractor is responsible for all excavation support and protection systems as required by local, state, and OSHA regulations.**
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary utilities and support facilities.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Furnish, install, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls and of resisting soil and hydrostatic pressure and superimposed and construction loads.
  - 1. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  - 2. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  - 3. Monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements.
- B. Excavation support and protection must comply with ASHA, state and local requirements.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation:
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to excavation support and protection system including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
    - b. Proposed excavations.
    - c. Proposed equipment.
    - d. Monitoring of excavation support and protection system.
    - e. Working area location and stability.
    - f. Coordination with waterproofing.
    - g. Abandonment or removal of excavation support and protection system.

##### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
- B. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by geotechnical engineer. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
  - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for excavation support and protection.
  - 2. The geotechnical report is referenced elsewhere in the Project Manual.
- C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
  - 1. During installation of excavation support and protection systems, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.
- B. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 3 Section "Shotcrete" for shotcrete materials and mixes, reinforcement, and shotcrete application.
- C. Cast-in-Place Concrete: ACI 301, of compressive strength required for application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
  - 1. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.
- B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that forming and finishing of concrete surfaces are not impeded.
- D. Monitor excavation support and protection systems daily during excavation progress and for as long as excavation remains open. Promptly correct bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection systems remain stable.
- E. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installing excavation support and protection systems.

END OF SECTION 02260

## SECTION 02281

### TERMITE CONTROL

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Soil treatment for termite control below grade, to interior and exterior foundation perimeter.
- B. Kansas Department of Agriculture has issued the attached Fact Sheet regarding Termite Pretreatment Applications. All contractors shall follow the recommendations addressed in the article.

##### 1.02 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years documented experience approved by manufacturer, licensed, and approved regulations.

##### 1.03 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements for application, application licensing, authority to use toxicant chemicals, and in accordance with EPA.
- B. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of toxicants.

##### 1.04 SEQUENCING

- A. Apply toxicant 12 hours prior to installation of vapor barrier under slabs-on-grade and finish grading work outside foundations.
- B. Notify Architect 24 hours prior to application.

##### 1.05 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year warranty under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for damage and repairs to building and building contents caused by termites. Repair damage. Re-treat where required.
- C. Inspect and report annually to Owner in writing. Owner reserves the right to renew warranty for an additional five years.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Kansas Department of Agriculture has issued the attached Fact Sheet regarding Termite Pretreatment Applications. All contractors shall follow the recommendations addressed in this article.
- B. Toxicant Chemical: EPA and Local authority approved; synthetically color dyed to permit visual identification of treated soil.
- C. Diluent: Recommended by toxicant manufacturer.
- D. Mix toxicant to manufacturer's instructions.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify all the site conditions and become familiar with project scope.
- B. Verify that soil surfaces are unfrozen, sufficiently dry to absorb toxicant, and ready to receive treatment.
- C. Verify final grading is complete.

##### 3.02 APPLICATION

- A. Spray apply or Inject toxicant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply toxicant at locations indicated in Schedule at end of Section.
- C. Apply extra treatment to structure penetration surfaces such as pipe or ducts, and soil penetrations such as grounding rods or posts.
- D. Re-treat disturbed treated soil with same toxicant as original treatment. Retreat around building perimeter after top soil has been placed, directly adjacent to foundation wall.
- E. If inspection or testing identifies the presence of termites, re-treat soil and re-test.

3.03 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work, post signage to warn workers that soil poisoning has been applied.
- B. Do not permit soil grading over treated work.

3.04 SCHEDULES

- A. Locations:
  - 1. Under Slabs-on-Grade including basement floors, porches and stoops.
  - 2. Both Sides of Foundation Surfaces.
  - 3. Soil Within 10 feet of Building Perimeter.

END OF SECTION 02281

# FACT SHEET

## Termite Pretreatment Applications

The Kansas Pesticide Law and the Federal Insecticide Fungicide and Rodenticide Act require that pesticide products be applied according to label directions.

Pesticide product labels and the Kansas Pesticide Law state that it is unlawful for any person to use pesticides in a manner that is inconsistent with the pesticide's label instructions.

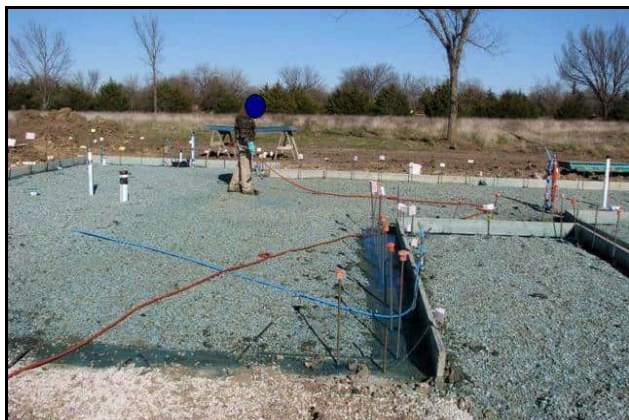
The Kansas Pesticide Law has additional requirements for termite pretreatment applications. They are outlined in K.A.R. 4-13-26, and state that in addition to label requirements, each preconstruction termite application must include both horizontal and vertical chemical barriers.

### What does this mean?

Plainly stated, termite pretreatment applications must include both horizontal and vertical applications at the proper rates to be in compliance with state law.

### What is a horizontal chemical barrier?

It is a continuous chemical barrier of termiticide that is applied to the soil beneath slab floors and porches, footing trenches for monolithic slabs and beneath stairs.



*Above: After the interior final grade is established, the applicator applies termiticide to the flat surface over which cement will be poured.*

### What is a vertical chemical barrier?

Vertical chemical barriers must be established in the soil around the base of foundations, plumbing fixtures, foundation walls, support piers and voids in masonry, and any other critical area where structural components extend below grade.



*Far left: The applicator completes the interior vertical application before the flat concrete surface is poured.*

*Left: The exterior vertical application is made after final grading is complete and sometimes after the turf and ornamentals are installed.*

Vertical applications may be performed two ways. The applicator may dig a trench according to label directions and apply the termiticide in the trench. Alternatively, the applicator may dig a trench according to label directions and apply termiticide by rodding in the trench to the top of the footing or to a minimum depth of four feet.

### What are the types and costs of termiticides?

There are two basic types of soil treatment termiticides offered on the market: repellent and nonrepellent. Repellent termiticides are generally less expensive than nonrepellent termiticides.

When estimating the cost of termiticides for your project, you should consider the cost of the termiticide and how much will need to be applied to follow label directions and state regulations.

Termiticide prices can be divided into three groups. The lowest priced group is repellent termiticides. The middle priced group includes the higher cost repellents and lower cost nonrepellent termiticides.

The highest priced group is nonrepellent termiticides.

An easy way to figure the cost of termiticide products in a job estimate is by the cost of a finished gallon of solution to be applied.

Low-cost termiticides are about 40 cents to 60 cents per finished gallon, mid-cost are about \$1 per finished gallon and high-cost are about \$1.65 per finished gallon.

### **How much should be applied?**

You can estimate the amount of horizontal area to be treated for a flat slab building by first determining the size of the slab. For instance, a building that is 60 feet by 100 feet has a 6,000 square feet area to be treated. Most termiticide labels require a minimum of one gallon of finished solution per 10 square feet, so the horizontal application would require 600 gallons of finished solution.

Next, estimate the amount of vertical application volume to be applied. Assume the same 60 foot by 100 foot building has four-foot foundation footings. The vertical application has to be made to the inside and outside of the foundation wall, so the estimated linear feet to be treated are 640.

Using the formula four gallons for every 10 linear feet per foot of depth would give the following amount of termiticide to apply:  $4 \times (640/10) \times 4$  foot of depth = 1,024 gallons of finished solution for the vertical application.

Combining the gallons of finished solution needed for the horizontal application (600) with the gallons needed for the vertical application (1,024) results in a total 1,624 gallons of finished solution to treat the building according to the label directions and state regulations. The cost of termiticide to treat this building would then be:

- Low-cost termiticide: \$650 to \$974
- Mid-cost termiticide: \$1,624
- High-cost termiticide: \$2,680

These estimates do not include the pest control company's labor, equipment and other operating costs.

### **What should I look for in a pretreatment bid?**

Occasionally a bid is less than the cost of the termiticide needed to properly treat the structure. A reputable company cannot perform the treatment for less than the cost of the pesticide. Seek bids from several firms and make sure all bids are received in writing. You should also:

- get a label for the termiticide to be applied and read it carefully.
- check to make sure that bids received are in compliance with the pesticide label and the Kansas Pesticide Law.
- ask for a written contract that specifies what is to be done, who will do it, the termiticide to be used, the amounts to be used, and how the application will be performed.
- require a warranty and understand what it means to the property owner.

Most termite preconstruction treatments will require several applications at different times during the construction process. To keep your project on schedule and to be sure the termiticide is properly applied:

- notify the pest control company several days ahead of when an application can be made so that it is scheduled with ample time to complete it.
- be present when the termiticide is applied and record the amount of finished termiticide solution used.
- notify the pest control company when the structure and exterior final grade are completed, so the final exterior vertical application is made. This is the first line of defense against termites.

Contact the Kansas Department of Agriculture Pesticide and Fertilizer program at (785) 296-3786 any time you have questions about termite treatment bids or applications.

*This project has been funded wholly or in part by the United States Environmental Protection Agency under assistance agreement BG99732308 to the Kansas Department of Agriculture. The contents do not necessarily reflect the views and policies of the Environmental Protection Agency, nor does mention of trade names or commercial products constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.*

Pesticide and Fertilizer Program  
Kansas Department of Agriculture  
109 SW 9<sup>th</sup> Street, 3<sup>rd</sup> Floor  
Topeka, KS 66612  
(785) 296-3786



## SECTION 02700

### PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete sidewalks, parking lot, drives, curbs, and gutters.

##### 1.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Paving: Designs for both regular-duty and heavy-duty commercial vehicles.

##### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with ACI 301, requirements of Sections 03100, 03200 and 03300.
- B. Obtain cementitious materials from same source throughout.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not place concrete when base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FORM MATERIALS

- A. Wood or Steel form material, profiled to suit conditions.
- B. Joint Filler: ANSI/ASTM D1751 type; 3/4 inch thick.

##### 2.02 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Welded Steel Wire Fabric: Plain type, ANSI/ASTM A185; 6x6-W2.9 x W2.9 in flat sheets or coiled rolls; unfinished.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615; 40 or 60 ksi yield grade; deformed billet steel bars; unfinished.

##### 2.03 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cement: ASTM C150 Air Entraining - Type IA Portland type, natural color.
- B. Fine and Coarse Mix Aggregates: ASTM C33.
- C. Water: Potable, not detrimental to concrete.
- D. Air Entrainment: ASTM C260.
- E. Chemical Admixture: ASTM C494, as approved by architect.

##### 2.04 CONCRETE MIX - BY PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Mix concrete in accordance with, ACI 304. Deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94.
- B. Provide concrete to the following criteria:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: Reference schedule below.
  - 2. Slump: 3 to 4 inches.
  - 3. Minimum Water/Cement Ratio: 6.5 gallon/6 sack.
  - 4. Air Entrained: 6 percent (+- 2 percent).
- C. Use accelerating admixtures in cold weather only when approved by Architect/Engineer. Use of admixtures will not relax cold weather placement requirements.
- D. Use calcium chloride only when approved by Architect/Engineer.
- E. Use set retarding admixtures during hot weather only when approved by Architect/Engineer.

##### 2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to the architect and appointed testing laboratory firm for review prior to commencement of work.
- B. Tests on cement and aggregates shall be performed to ensure conformance with specified requirements.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify compacted subgrade, granular base and stabilized soil is acceptable and ready to support paving and imposed loads.
- B. Verify gradients and elevations of base are correct.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Moisten base to minimize absorption of water from fresh concrete.
- B. Coat surfaces of manholes, catch basins, and frames with oil to prevent bond with concrete pavement.
- C. Notify Architect/Engineer minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of concreting operations.

### 3.03 FORMING

- A. Place and secure forms to correct location, dimension, and profile.
- B. Assemble formwork to permit easy stripping and dismantling without damaging concrete.
- C. Place joint filler vertical in position, in straight lines. Secure to formwork during concrete placement.

### 3.04 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Place reinforcement at mid-height of slabs-on-grade.
- B. Interrupt reinforcement at expansion joints.
- C. Place dowels and reinforcement to achieve pavement and curb alignment as detailed.
- D. Provide doweled joints 12 inch o.c. at interruptions of concrete.

### 3.05 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Place concrete in accordance with ACI 301.
- B. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, and embedded parts are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- C. Place concrete continuously between predetermined construction joints. Do not break or interrupt successive pours such that cold joints occur.
- D. Place concrete to indicated pattern.

### 3.06 JOINTS

- A. Place 1 inch expansion joints at 50 foot intervals or more frequently as noted on drawings. Align curb, gutter, and sidewalk joints. Seal all expansion joints with self-leveling sealant.
- B. Where concrete abuts building provide 1/2" expansion joint with joint filler and self-leveling sealant.
- B. Place joint filler between paving components and building or other appurtenances. Recess top of filler 1/4 inch for sealant placement by Section 07900.
- C. Provide scored or sawn joints at intervals equal to sidewalk width, unless noted otherwise. Scored and sawn joints at curbs and parking lots shall be at 10 feet on-center each way.
- D. Saw cut contraction joints 3/16 inch wide at an optimum time after finishing. Cut 1/3 into depth of slab.

### 3.07 FINISHING

- A. Parking: Light broom.
- B. Sidewalk Paving: Light broom, radius to 1/4 inch and trowel joint edges.
- C. Handicapped Ramps: Reference ADA. Sloped sections shall have raised circular texture. Contractor may install pre-manufactured pavers or fiberglass forms in lieu of cast in place concrete.
- D. Curbs and Gutters: Trowel finish.
- E. Inclined Vehicular Ramps: Broom perpendicular to slope.
- F. Place curing compound on exposed concrete surfaces immediately after finishing. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Four concrete test cylinders shall be taken for every 100 or less cu yds (5 cu yd minimum) of each class of concrete placed each day.
- B. One additional test cylinder shall be taken during cold weather and cured on site under same conditions as concrete it represents.
- C. One slump test shall be taken for each set of test cylinders taken.

3.09 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after placement, protect pavement from premature drying, excessive hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.

3.10 SCHEDULES

- A. Concrete sidewalks, curb and gutter: 4,000 psi 28 day concrete, 4 inches thick, 6x6 – W2.9 x W2.9 W.W.F. reinforced, natural color Portland cement, broom finish, detectable warnings per ADA at ramps and curb cuts.
- B. Concrete Parking Lots and Drives:  
Regular duty: 4,000 psi 28 day concrete, 6 inches thick (reference civil drawings), natural color, Portland cement, broom finish.

END OF SECTION 02700



## SECTION 02764

### PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete pavement.
  - 2. Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint-sealant samples in ~~1/2-inch-~~ (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two ~~6-inch-~~ (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for sealants.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing of current sealant products within a 36-month period preceding the Work.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

##### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
  - 2. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below ~~40 deg F~~ (4.4 deg C).
  - 3. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
  - 4. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 5. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

### 2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component Jet-Fuel-Resistant Urethane Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, pourable, coal-tar-modified, urethane formulation complying with ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.; Sonomeric 1.
- B. Type NS Silicone Sealant for Concrete: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, nonsag silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type NS.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Crafcro Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.
- C. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Crafcro Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.

### 2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.
- D. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

### 2.5 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
  - 3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 02764





SECTION 03100  
CONCRETE FORMWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Formwork for cast-in place concrete, with shoring, bracing, and anchorage.
  - B. Openings for other work.
  - C. Form accessories.
  - D. Form stripping.
- 1.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site per the suppliers and/or manufacturer's recommendations.
  - B. Store off ground in ventilated and protected manner to prevent deterioration from moisture.
- 1.03 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate this Section with other Sections of work which require attachment of components to formwork.
  - B. If formwork is placed after reinforcement resulting in insufficient concrete cover over reinforcement before proceeding, request instructions from Architect/Engineer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 WOOD FORM MATERIALS
  - A. Form Materials: At the discretion of the Contractor.
- 2.02 PREFABRICATED FORMS
  - A. Preformed Steel Forms: Minimum gage matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished surfaces.
  - B. Glass Fiber Fabric Reinforced Plastic Forms: Matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished concrete surfaces.
- 2.03 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES
  - A. Form Ties: Removable or Snap-off type, metal, size and shape to minimize filling, waterproofing, and refinishing concrete surfaces.
  - B. Form Release Agent: Colorless mineral oil which will not stain concrete, or absorb moisture, or impair natural bonding or color characteristics of coating intended for use on concrete.
  - C. Corners: Chamfer, exposed edges 1/2 inch unless otherwise noted or detailed on the drawings.
  - D. Dovetail Anchor Slot: Galvanized steel, 22 gage thick, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
  - E. Flashing Reglets: Galvanized steel 22 gage thick, longest possible lengths, with alignment splines for joints, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
  - F. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts, and Anchorages: Sized as required, of sufficient strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.
  - G. Waterstops: Rubber Polyvinyl chloride, minimum 1,750 psi tensile strength, minimum 50 degrees F to plus 175 degrees F working temperature range, maximum possible lengths, ribbed profile, preformed corner sections, heat welded jointing.

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
  - A. Verify lines, levels, and centers before proceeding with formwork. Ensure that dimensions agree with drawings.

### 3.02 EARTH FORMS

- A. Earth forms if permitted, hand trim sides and bottom of earth forms. Remove loose soil prior to placing concrete.

### 3.03 ERECTION - FORMWORK

- A. Erect formwork, shoring, and bracing to achieve design requirements, in accordance with requirements of ACI 301.
- B. Provide bracing to ensure stability of formwork. Shore or strengthen formwork subject to over stressing by construction loads.
- C. Arrange and assemble formwork to permit dismantling and stripping. Do not damage concrete during stripping. Permit removal of remaining principal shores.
- D. Align joints and make watertight. Keep form joints to a minimum.
- E. Obtain approval before framing openings in structural members which are not indicated on Drawings.
- F. Provide chamfer strips on external corners of beams joists columns and exposed decorative concrete edges.
- G. Install void forms in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protect forms from moisture or crushing.

### 3.04 APPLICATION - FORM RELEASE AGENT

- A. Apply form release agent on formwork in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Apply prior to placement of reinforcing steel, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
- C. Do not apply form release agent where concrete surfaces will receive special finishes or applied coverings which are effected by agent. Soak inside surfaces of untreated forms with clean water. Keep surfaces coated prior to placement of concrete.

### 3.05 INSERTS, EMBEDDED PARTS, AND OPENINGS

- A. Provide formed openings where required for items to be embedded in passing through concrete work.
- B. Locate and set in place items which will be cast directly into concrete.
- C. Coordinate with work of other sections in forming and placing openings, slots, reglets, recesses, sleeves, bolts, anchors, other inserts, and components of other Work.
- D. Position recessed reglets for brick veneer masonry anchors to spacing and intervals specified in Section 04300.
- E. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, straight, level, and plumb. Ensure items are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- F. Install waterstops continuous without displacing reinforcement. Heat seal joints watertight.
- G. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection. Locate openings at bottom of forms to allow flushing water to drain.
- H. Close temporary openings with tight fitting panels, flush with inside face of forms, and neatly fitted so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.

### 3.06 FORM CLEANING

- A. Clean forms as erection proceeds, to remove foreign matter within forms.
- B. Clean formed cavities of debris prior to placing concrete.
- C. Flush with water or use compressed air to remove remaining foreign matter. Ensure that water and debris drain to exterior through clean-out ports.
- D. During cold weather, remove ice and snow from within forms. Do not use de-icing salts. Do not use water to clean out forms, unless formwork and concrete construction proceed within heated enclosure. Use compressed air or other means to remove foreign matter.

### 3.07 FORMWORK TOLERANCES

- A. Construct formwork to maintain tolerances required by ACI 301

### 3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect erected formwork, shoring, and bracing to ensure that work is in accordance with formwork design, and that supports, fastenings, wedges, ties, and items are secure.
- B. Do not reuse wood formwork more than 2 times for concrete surfaces to be exposed to view. Do not patch formwork.

3.09 FORM REMOVAL

- A. Do not remove forms or bracing until concrete has gained sufficient strength to carry its own weight and imposed loads.
- B. Loosen forms carefully. Do not wedge pry bars, hammers, or tools against finish concrete surfaces scheduled for exposure to view.
- C. Store removed forms in manner that surfaces to be in contact with fresh concrete will not be damaged. Discard damaged forms.

END OF SECTION 03100



## SECTION 03200

### CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Reinforcing steel bars, wire fabric, and accessories for cast-in-place concrete.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate bar sizes, spacings, locations, and quantities of reinforcing steel and wire fabric, bending and cutting schedules, and supporting and spacing devices.

##### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with CRSI - Manual of Standard Practice and ACI 301.

##### 1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate with placement of formwork, formed openings and other Work.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615, 60 ksi yield grade as indicated on the drawings; deformed billet steel bars, unfinished.
- B. Reinforcing Steel Plain Bar and Rod Mats: ASTM A615 Grade 60 as indicated on the drawings; steel bars or rods, unfinished.
- C. Stirrup Steel: ANSI/ASTM A82, unfinished.
- D. Welded Steel Wire Fabric: ASTM A815; in flat sheets; unfinished.

##### 2.02 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Tie Wire: Minimum 16 gage annealed type.
- B. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, and Spacers: Sized and shaped for strength and support of reinforcement during concrete placement conditions including load bearing pad on bottom to prevent vapor barrier puncture.
- C. Special Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, and Spacers: Adjacent to Weather Exposed Concrete Surfaces: Plastic coated steel type; size and shape as required, as indicated on plans and details.

##### 2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate concrete reinforcing in accordance with CRSI Manual of Practice.
- B. Weld reinforcement in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.4.
- C. Locate reinforcing splices not indicated on drawings, at point of minimum stress.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 PLACEMENT

- A. Place, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Do not deviate from required position.
- B. Do not displace or damage vapor barrier.
- C. Accommodate placement of formed openings.

- D. Maintain concrete cover around reinforcing as indicated on the drawings or if not indicated as follows:

<u>Item</u>	<u>Coverage</u>
Beams	1 1/2 inch
Column Ties	1 1/2 inch
Walls (exposed to weather or backfill)	2 inch
Footings and Concrete Formed against Earth	3 inch
Slabs on Fill	1 1/2 inch

END OF SECTION 03200

## SECTION 03300

### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cast-in-place concrete floors, footings, foundation walls, steps and ramps.
- B. Floors and slabs on grade.
- C. Control, expansion, and contraction joint devices associated with concrete work, including joint sealants.
- D. Equipment pads and light pole base.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- B. Product Data: Provide data on joint devices, attachment accessories.
- C. Samples: Submit 2-inch long samples of expansion/contraction joint.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation procedures and interface required with adjacent Work.
- E. Concrete Mix Design Proportions.
  - 1. Submit as specified in Part 2, Paragraph 2.05 F. Mix Proportions, this section, before placing concrete.
  - 2. Submit for each mix design.
  - 3. Resubmit for any change in mix design.
  - 4. Submit backup test data to verify strengths in accordance with ACI 301 and 318.

##### 1.03 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Accurately record actual locations of embedded utilities and components which are concealed from view.

##### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes
  - 1. International building code.
  - 2. ACI Specifications for Structural Concrete Buildings.
  - 3. Perform Work in accordance with ACI 318 Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
  - 4. Acquire cement and aggregate from same source for all work.
  - 5. Conform to ACI 305R when concreting during hot weather.
  - 6. Conform to ACI 306R when concreting during cold weather.
- B. Testing
  - 1. Employ acceptable testing laboratory to perform materials evaluation, testing, and design of concrete mixes. Testing shall comply with:
    - Sampling: ASTM C 172
    - Slump: ASTM C 143 (4" to 6" slump)
    - Air Content: ASTM C 173
    - Compressive Strength: ASTM C 39
  - 2. Concrete materials shall comply with these standards:
    - Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type as required
    - Aggregates: ASTM C 33
    - Water: Potable
    - Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260
    - Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494
    - Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type I
    - Deformed Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60
    - Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185
    - Ready-Mix Concrete: ASTM C 94
    - Placement in Cold Weather: ACI 306
    - Placement in Hot Weather: ACI 305

##### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the placement of joint devices with erection of concrete formwork and placement of form accessories.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cement: ASTM C150, Type I - Normal or Type III - High Early Strength Type V - Sulfate Resistant as required Portland type.
- B. Fine and Coarse Aggregates: ASTM C33.
- C. Water: Clean and not detrimental to concrete.

### 2.02 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air Entrainment: Per ASTM C260 at footings and foundations, **not allowed at slab / floor**.
- B. Chemical: ASTM C494 Type A - Water Reducing, Type B - Retarding, Type C - Accelerating, Type D - Water Reducing and Retarding, Type E - Water Reducing and Accelerating.

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bonding Agent: Polymer resin emulsion, polyvinyl acetate, Latex emulsion, two component modified epoxy resin, non-solvent two component polysulfide epoxy, mineral filled polysulfide polymer epoxy, mineral filled polysulfide polymer epoxy resin, or Polyamid cured epoxy as approved.
- B. Vapor Barrier: 15 mil thick clear polyethylene film.
- C. Non-Shrink Grout: Premixed compound consisting of nonmetallic aggregate, cement, water reducing and plasticizing agents; capable of developing minimum compressive strength of 2,400 psi in 48 hours and 7,000 psi in 28 days.
- D. Curing Compound: Liquid membrane-forming compound conforming to ASTM C 309, Type 1. Curing compound used on floors to be sealed, painted, tiled, or covered with resilient floor covering shall be guaranteed not to interfere with application of sealers, paint, tile mortar, or tile adhesive after 28-day curing period. Areas to receive carpet tile and VCT flooring shall receive Aquaron 2000 Cure and Seal.

### 2.04 JOINT DEVICES AND FILLER MATERIALS

- A. Joint Filler:
  - 1. Joint Filler Type A: ASTM D1751; Asphalt impregnated fiberboard or felt, 1/4 inch thick.
  - 2. Joint Filler Type B: ASTM D1752; Closed cell polyvinyl chloride foam, resiliency recovery of 95 percent if not compressed more than 50 percent of original thickness.
- B. Expansion and Contraction Joint Devices: ASTM B221 alloy, extruded aluminum; resilient elastomeric, vinyl, or neoprene, filler strip with a Shore A hardness of 35 to permit plus or minus 25 percent joint movement with full recovery; extruded aluminum or vinyl cover plate, of longest manufactured length at each location, recess mounted; color as selected.
- C. Sealant: Rubber or synthetic rubber compound.

### 2.05 CONCRETE MIX

- A. Mix concrete in accordance with ACI 304. Deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94.
- B. Select proportions for normal weight concrete in accordance with ACI 301.
- C. Provide concrete with compressive strength as indicated on S0.1.
- D. Use accelerating admixtures in cold weather only when approved by Architect/Engineer. Use of admixtures will not relax cold weather placement requirements.
- E. Use set retarding admixtures during hot weather only when approved by Architect/Engineer.
- F. Mix Proportions.
  - 1. Concrete shall be homogeneous, readily placeable, and uniformly workable; proportioned to conform to ACI 211.1.
  - 2. Mix proportions for all concrete shall be selected preferably on the basis of field experience, but in the case where sufficient or suitable strength test data is not available, concrete shall be proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mix design. Designs shall conform to ACI 301.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify requirements for concrete cover over reinforcement.
- B. Verify that anchors, seats, plates, reinforcement and other items to be cast into concrete are accurately placed, positioned securely, and will not cause hardship in placing concrete.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare previously placed concrete by cleaning with steel brush and applying bonding agent in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. In locations where new concrete is dowelled to existing work, drill holes in existing concrete, insert steel dowels and pack solid with non-shrink grout.



- C. Use forms for all concrete except footings may be earth formed. Adequately brace and stiffen forms to prevent deflection and settlement.

### 3.03 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Place concrete in accordance with ACI 301.
- B. Notify Architect/Engineer minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of operations.
- C. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, embedded parts, formed expansion, and contraction joints are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- D. Install vapor barrier under interior slabs on grade. Lap joints minimum 6 inches and seal watertight by sealant applied between overlapping edges and ends or taping edges and ends.
- E. Repair vapor barrier damaged during placement of concrete reinforcing. Repair with vapor barrier material; lap over damaged areas minimum 6 inches and seal watertight.
- F. Separate slabs on grade from vertical surfaces with 1/2 inch thick joint filler.
- G. Place joint filler in floor slab pattern placement sequence. Set top to required elevations. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- H. Extend joint filler from bottom of slab to within 1/2 inch of finished slab surface. Conform to Section 07900 for finish joint sealer requirements.
- I. Install joint devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- J. Install construction joint devices in coordination with floor slab pattern placement sequence. Set top to required elevations. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- K. Install joint device anchors. Maintain correct position to allow joint cover to be flush with floor and wall finish.
- L. Install joint covers in longest practical length, when adjacent construction activity is complete.
- M. Apply sealants in joint devices in accordance with Section 07900.
- N. Maintain records of concrete placement. Record date, location, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.
- O. Place concrete continuously between predetermined expansion, control, and construction joints.
- P. Do not interrupt successive placement; do not permit cold joints to occur where possible.
- Q. Place floor slabs in saw cut pattern indicated. Cut joints with power blade as soon as concrete surface is firm enough to resist tearing or damage by the blade and before random shrinkage cracks can occur (Usually required 4 to 12 hours after finishing).
- R. Saw-cut joint - Use 3/16 inch thick blade, cut into 1/4 depth of slab thickness.
- S. Screed floors and slabs on grade level, maintaining surface flatness of maximum 1/4 inch in 10 ft.
- T. Place concrete on properly prepared and unfrozen subgrade and only in dewatered excavations.

### 3.04 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. Provide formed concrete surfaces to be left exposed concrete walls columns beams joists with smooth rubbed finish.
- B. Finish concrete floor surfaces in accordance with ACI 301.
- C. Wood float surfaces which will receive quarry tile, ceramic tile, or terrazzo with full bed setting system.
- D. Steel trowel surfaces which will receive carpeting, resilient flooring, seamless flooring, thin set quarry tile, or thin set ceramic tile.
- E. Steel trowel surfaces which are scheduled to be exposed.
- F. In areas with floor drains, maintain floor elevation at walls; pitch surfaces uniformly to drains at 1/4 inch per foot or as indicated on drawings.

### 3.05 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
- D. Cure floor surfaces in accordance with ACI 308.
- E. At areas scheduled to receive stained concrete floor finish, use only curing components and methods approved by the stain manufacturer.
- F. Ponding: Maintain 100 percent coverage of water over floor slab areas continuously for 4 days.
- G. Spraying: Spray water over floor slab areas and maintain wet for 7 days.
- H. Curing Compound: Cure with liquid membrane-forming compound conforming to ASTM C 309, Type I. Apply immediately after removal of forms (which have been continuously wet); or in case of a slab, after the concrete has been finished and is hardened sufficiently to walk on. Apply curing compound to all exposed surfaces immediately after removing form or after finishing concrete.

### 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed in accordance with ACI 301 and under provisions of the General Requirements.

- B. Provide free access to Work and cooperate with appointed firm.
  - C. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to inspection and testing firm for review prior to commencement of Work.
  - D. Tests of cement and aggregates may be performed to ensure conformance with specified requirements.
  - E. Three concrete test cylinders will be taken for every 75 or less cu yds of each class of concrete placed. If 4" diameter cylinders are used, an additional cylinder shall be tested at 28 days.
  - F. One additional test cylinder will be taken during cold weather concreting, cured on job site under same conditions as concrete it represents.
  - G. One slump test will be taken for each set of test cylinders taken.
  - H. Water added to concrete having a slump below the specified minimum shall be at Contractor's risk. If the water added produces a slump greater than the specified maximum, the concrete will be rejected. If water is added, the concrete shall be remixed for a minimum of 25 revolutions. Three concrete test cylinders will be taken from every truck that water is added to at the jobsite.
- 3.07 PATCHING
- A. Allow Architect/Engineer to inspect concrete surfaces immediately upon removal of forms.
  - B. Excessive honeycomb or embedded debris in concrete is not acceptable. Notify Architect/Engineer upon discovery.
  - C. Patch imperfections as directed or in accordance with ACI 301.
- 3.08 DEFECTIVE CONCRETE
- A. Defective Concrete: Concrete not conforming to required lines, details, dimensions, tolerances or specified requirements.
  - B. Repair or replacement of defective concrete will be determined by the Architect/Engineer.
  - C. Do not patch, fill, touch-up, repair, or replace exposed concrete except upon express direction of Architect/Engineer for each individual area.

END OF SECTION 03300

## SECTION 04100

### MORTAR AND MASONRY GROUT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- A. Mortar and grout for masonry.
- 1.02 GENERAL
  - A. All notes or specifications on structural drawings shall override any discrepancies listed.
- 1.03 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Include design mix, indicate whether the Proportion or Property specification of ASTM C270 is to be used, required environmental conditions, and admixture limitations.
- 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Perform Work in accordance with ACI 530 and ACI 530.1.
- 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Maintain packaged materials clean, dry, and protected against dampness, freezing, and foreign matter.
- 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
  - B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MATERIALS
  - A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, match existing color.
  - B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91, Type S, match existing color.
  - C. Premix Mortar: ASTM C387, Type S below grade and Type N above grade, match existing color.
  - D. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C144, standard masonry type.
  - E. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
  - F. Water: Clean and potable.
  - G. Bonding Agent: Latex or Epoxy type.
  - H. Integral Liquid Polymeric Water-Repellent Mortar Admixture: Mix with mortar during mixing, capable of achieving a Class E rating when evaluated using ASTM E 514 with the test extended to 72 hours, using the rating criteria found in ASTM E 514-74. There should be no decrease in concrete masonry bond strength or compressive strength of prisms when compared to a control when tested according to ASTM C 1357 and ASTM C 1314 respectively. Provide product listed below, or approved equal:
    - 1. Dry Block Integral Liquid Polymeric Water-Repellent Mortar Admixture manufactured by Grace Construction Products.
- 2.02 MORTAR COLOR AND STYLE
  - A. Mortar Color: **Natural Gray.**
- 2.03 MORTAR MIXES
  - A. Mortar For Load Bearing Walls and Partitions: ASTM C270, Type S using the Property specification.
  - B. Mortar For Non-Load Bearing Walls and Partitions: ASTM C270, Type N using the Property specification.
  - C. Mortar For Engineered Masonry: ASTM C270, Type S using the Property specification.
  - D. Pointing Mortar: ASTM C270, Type N or O using the Property specification.

2.04 MORTAR MIXING

- A. Thoroughly mix mortar ingredients in accordance with ASTM C270 in quantities needed for immediate use.
- B. Maintain sand uniformly damp immediately before the mixing process.
- C. Add mortar color and admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide uniformity of mix and coloration.
- D. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of mortar.
- E. If water is lost by evaporation, re-temper only within two hours of mixing.
- F. Use mortar within two hours after mixing at temperatures of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), or two-and-one-half hours at temperatures under 40 degrees F.

2.05 GROUT MIXES

- A. Bond Beams, and Lintels: 2,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; premixed type in accordance with ASTM C476.
- B. Engineered Masonry: 2,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; premixed type in accordance with ASTM C476.

2.06 GROUT MIXING

- A. Mix grout in accordance with ASTM C270 and C476.
- B. Add admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; mix uniformly.
- C. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of grout.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Request inspection of spaces to be grouted.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install mortar and grout in accordance with premix mortar manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install mortar and grout in accordance with ASTM C270.
- C. Work grout into masonry cores and cavities to eliminate voids.
- D. Do not install grout in lifts greater than 16 inches or two CMU courses without consolidating grout by rodding.
- E. Do not displace reinforcement while placing grout.
- F. Remove excess mortar from grout spaces.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and evaluate mortar in accordance with ASTM C780.
- B. Test and evaluate grout in accordance with ASTM C1019.

END OF SECTION 04100

## SECTION 04300

### UNIT MASONRY SYSTEM

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete masonry units.
- B. Brick units.
- C. Reinforcement, anchorage, and accessories.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for masonry units and fabricated wire reinforcement.

##### 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

##### 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Accept units on site. Inspect for damage.

##### 1.05 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
- B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
- C. Hot Cold Weather Requirements: IMIAC - Recommended Practices and Guide Specifications for Hot or Cold Weather Masonry Construction.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Hollow Load and Non-Load Bearing Block Units (CMU): Lightweight units, typical. All exterior exposed concrete masonry units and mortar shall contain integral water repellent. Units shall comply with ASTM C 33 and ASTM C 90, grade N water permanence per ASTM E 514 test. Wind driven protection per ASTM E 514-74, Class E. Full wall flexural bond strength per ASTM E 72-74 all interior concrete masonry shall be grade S, Type I, moisture controlled units. **Reference Structural Drawing Notes for additional requirements.**
- B. Size and Shape: Nominal modular size of 6 x 8 x 16 inches. Provide special units for 90 degree corners, bond beams, lintels, and corners.

##### 2.02 BRICK UNITS

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows for each form of brick required:
  - 1. Provide units with exposed surfaces finished for ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces.
- B. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
- C. Face Brick: ASTM C 216, Grade MW or SW, and as follows:
  - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 20 g/30 sq. in per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
  - 3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  - 4. Size and Shape: Modular, 3-5/8 inches deep by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.
  - 5. Application: Use where brick is exposed, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Manufacturer, Color and Texture: **Kansas Brick & Tile, 530 Dark Modular, velour texture.**

### 2.03 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Single and Multiple Wythe Joint Reinforcement: Truss type; steel wire, hot dip galvanized to ASTM A641 after fabrication, No. 9 side rods with No. 9 cross ties.  
Manufacturers:
  - a) DUR-O-WALL
  - b) TRU-MESH
  - c) BET-R-WALL
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615, 40 or 60 ksi yield grade, deformed billet bars, uncoated finish.
- C. Wall Ties: Formed steel wire, 3/16 inch thick, adjustable, hot dip galvanized to ASTM A123 steel finish. Slotted, dovetail type tie. Corrugated ties not accepted.  
Manufacturers:
  - a) DUR-O-WALL
  - b) TRU-MESH
  - c) BET-R-WALL

### 2.04 MORTAR AND GROUT

- A. Mortar and Grout: As specified in Section 04100.

### 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Preformed Control Joints: Rubber, Neoprene, Polyvinyl chloride material. Provide with corner and tee accessories, heat or cement fused joints.
- B. Joint Filler: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride, polyethylene, polyurethane or rubber; oversized 50 percent to joint width; self expanding.
- C. Cleaning Solution: Non-acidic, not harmful to masonry work or adjacent materials.
- D. Vapor Barrier: Fluid Applied Air Barrier.
- E. Nailing Strips: Softwood, preservative treated for moisture resistance, dovetail shape, sized to masonry joints.
- F. Weeps: Preformed plastic cotton wick filled, or cotton rope. Extend up wall 18".
- G. Cavity Vents: Molded polyvinyl chloride grilles; insect resistant.
- H. Cavity wall mortar Net: 90% open area, 12" H x 3/4" and 1" wide, 18" minimum density PVC or nylon material set behind bottom brick courses between brick and flashing around all exterior veneer walls.

### 2.06 LINTELS

- A. As detailed on drawings. All lintels shall be field painted to closely match adjacent masonry material.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify items provided by other sections of work are properly sized and located.
- C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied to other sections.
- B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

### 3.03 COURSING

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units:
  - 1. Bond: Running unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches in height.
  - 3. Mortar Joints: Concave, unless noted otherwise.
- D. Brick Units:
  - 1. Bond: Running unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Coursing: Three units and three mortar joint to equal 8 inches in height.
  - 3. Mortar Joints: Concave, unless noted otherwise.

### 3.04 PLACING AND BONDING

- A. Lay solid masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- B. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- C. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints are not permitted.
- D. Remove excess mortar as work progresses.
- E. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- F. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.
- G. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.
- H. Cut mortar joints flush where wall tile is scheduled, resilient base is scheduled, cavity insulation vapor barrier adhesive is applied, or bitumen damp proofing is applied.
- I. Isolate masonry partitions from vertical structural framing members with a control joint.
- J. Isolate top joint of masonry partitions from horizontal structural framing members and slabs or decks with compressible joint filler.

### 3.05 WEEPS

- A. Install weeps in veneer at 32 inches o.c. horizontally above through-wall flashing, above shelf angles and lintels, at bottom of walls, and under precast concrete window sills.

### 3.06 CAVITY WALL

- A. Do not permit mortar to drop or accumulate into cavity air space or to plug weeps.
- B. Build inner wythe ahead of outer wythe to receive cavity insulation and air/vapor barrier adhesive.

### 3.07 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches o.c.
- B. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings. Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.
- C. Place joint reinforcement continuous in first and second joint below top of walls.
- D. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches.
- E. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
- F. At masonry veneer, attach wall ties to metal studs at back-up wall at maximum 16 inches o.c. vertically and 32 inches o.c. horizontally. Place at maximum 3 inches o.c. each way around perimeter of openings, within 12 inches of openings.

### 3.08 MASONRY FLASHINGS

- A. Extend flashings horizontally at foundation walls, above ledge or shelf angles and lintels, under parapet caps, and at bottom of walls.
- B. Turn flashing up minimum 8 inches and bed into mortar joint of masonry, seal to concrete, seal, or underlap at sheathing over framed back-up.
- C. Lap end joints minimum 6 inches and seal watertight.
- D. Turn flashing, fold, and seal at corners, bends, and interruptions.

### 3.09 LINTELS

- A. Install loose steel or precast concrete lintels over openings as indicated or detailed.
- B. Install reinforced unit masonry lintels over openings where steel or precast concrete lintels are not scheduled.
- C. Openings Up To 42 inches wide: Place two, No. 4 reinforcing bars 1 inch from bottom web. Unless otherwise noted or detailed.
- D. Openings From 42 inches Up To 78 inches Wide: Place two, No. 5 reinforcing bars 1 inch from bottom web. Unless otherwise noted or detailed.
- E. Openings Over 78 inches: Reinforce openings as detailed.
- F. Do not splice reinforcing bars.
- G. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
- H. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
- I. Allow masonry lintels to attain specified strength before removing temporary supports.
- J. Maintain minimum 8 inch bearing on each side of opening.

3.10 GROUTED COMPONENTS

- A. Reinforce bond beam as indicated or detailed.
- B. Lap splices minimum 24 bar diameters.
- C. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
- D. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
- E. At bearing locations, fill masonry cores with grout for a minimum 12 inches either side of opening.

3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control and expansion joints.
- B. Form control joint with a sheet building paper bond breaker fitted to one side of the hollow contour end of the block unit. Fill the resultant core with grout fill. Rake joint at exposed unit faces for placement of backer rod and sealant.
- C. Install preformed control joint device in continuous lengths. Seal butt and corner joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Size control joint in accordance with Section 07900 for sealant performance.
- E. Form expansion joint as detailed.

3.12 BUILT-IN WORK

- A. As work progresses, install built-in metal door and glazed frames, fabricated metal frames, window frames, wood nailing strips, fireplace accessories, anchor bolts, plates, and other items to be built-in the work and furnished by other sections.
- B. Install built-in items plumb and level.
- C. Bed anchors of metal door and glazed frames in adjacent mortar joints. Fill frame voids solid with grout. Fill adjacent masonry cores with grout minimum 12 inches from framed openings.
- D. Do not build in organic materials subject to deterioration.

3.13 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Alignment of Columns: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation from Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/32 inch.
- C. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft and 1/2 inch in 20 ft or more.
- D. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch in two stories or more.
- E. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft and 1/4 inch in 10 ft; 1/2 inch in 30 ft.
- F. Maximum Variation of Joint Thickness: 1/8 inch in 3 ft.
- G. Maximum Variation from Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4 inch.

3.14 CUTTING AND FITTING

- A. Cut and fit for chases, pipes, conduit, sleeves, and grounds. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
- B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

3.15 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.
- B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.
- C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
- D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.

3.16 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work.
- B. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at exposed external corners which may be damaged by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 04300



## SECTION 04720

### CAST STONE

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Architectural Cast Stone, including the following:
    - a. Window sills.
    - b. Wall accents.
    - c. 90° corners.
    - d. Wainscot.
    - e. Wall cap.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for cast stone units.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.

##### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to minimize the need for on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
  - 1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
  - 2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- C. Store installation materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

##### 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - 3. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Architectural Cast Stone. Color: Tan. Manufacturer must be able to provide both rock face and ground face pieces for entire project.**
- B. **Heartland Architectural Stone. Color: HA104. Manufacturer must be able to provide both rock face and ground face pieces for entire project.**

##### 2.02 CAST STONE MATERIALS

- A. Wainscot, Quoins and Accents: color to be selected by Owner, **Rock Face**. Size and shape per drawings.

- B. Sills and Wall Cap: color as selected by Owner, **Ground Face**. Size and shape per drawings
- C. Fabrication Tolerances:
  1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch (3 mm), whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch (3 mm), whichever is greater.

**D. Color: As listed in paragraph 2.01.**

**2.04 MORTAR MATERIALS**

- A. Provide mortar materials that comply with Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- G. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime masonry cement or mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements and containing no other ingredients.
  1. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  2. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  3. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
- H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
  4. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  5. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
  6. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  7. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- I. Water: Potable.

**2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- B. Dowels: Round stainless-steel bars complying with ASTM A 276, Type 304, and 1/2-inch (12-mm) diameter.
- C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength, general-purpose cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other construction stains from new masonry surfaces without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces; expressly approved for intended use by cast stone manufacturer and expressly approved by cleaner manufacturer for use on cast stone and adjacent masonry materials.

**2.06 MORTAR MIXES**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for mortar mixes.
- B. Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar.
  2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
- C. Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
  1. For setting mortar, use Type S.
  2. For pointing mortar, use Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
  - E. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
    1. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- 2.07 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Employ an independent testing agency to sample and test cast stone units according to ASTM C 1364.
    1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of cast stone.
  1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."
- B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
  1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
  2. Install masonry blocks as required to space and slope units as detailed.
  3. Install mortar net and weeps per the drawings and as recommended by Manufacturer.
- C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. If not indicated, set units with joints 3/8 to 1/2 inch (10 to 13 mm) wide.
  2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
  3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
  4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
  5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
  6. Keep head joints in coping and other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
  7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- E. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm). Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- F. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch (10 mm). Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- G. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints of widths and at locations indicated. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  1. Form open joint of width indicated, but not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- I. Prepare joints indicated to receive sealant and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  1. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm) or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.

- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm), except due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.
- 3.05 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
  - B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
  - C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
    - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
    - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
  - D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
    - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
    - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
    - 3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
    - 4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
    - 5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes No. 20.
    - 6. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 04720

SECTION 05120  
STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Structural steel framing members and support members.
  - B. Base plates.
  - C. Grouting under base plates.
- 1.02 GENERAL
  - A. All notes or specifications on structural drawings shall override any discrepancies listed.
- 1.03 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Shop Drawings:
    - 1. Indicate profiles, sizes, spacing, and locations of structural members, openings, attachments, and fasteners.
    - 2. Connections and Connections not detailed.
    - 3. Cambers, and loads.
    - 4. Indicate welded connections with AWS A2.0 welding symbols. Indicate net weld lengths.
    - 5. The Engineer prepared Contract Drawings cannot be used as Erection Drawings.
  - C. Welders Certificates: Certify welders employed on the Work, verifying AWS qualification within the previous 12 months.
- 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Fabricate and erect structural steel members in accordance with AISC - Manual of Steel Construction, Allowable Stress Design, Ninth Edition.
  - B. Perform Work in accordance with AISC - Specification for Architectural Exposed Structural Steel.
  - C. High strength bolts shall comply with Specification for Structural Forms using ASTM A 325.
- 1.05 QUALIFICATIONS
  - A. Fabricator: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years' documented experience.
  - B. Erector: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years' documented experience.
  - C. Design connections not detailed on the Drawings under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State of Kansas.
- 1.06 FIELD MEASUREMENTS
  - A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on shop drawings and/or as instructed by the manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MATERIALS
  - A. Reference drawings and notes on the drawings.
- 2.02 FINISH
  - A. Prepare structural component surfaces in accordance with SSPC SP 2.
  - B. Shop prime structural steel members. Do not prime surfaces that will be fireproofed, field welded, in contact with concrete or high strength bolts.
- 2.03 SHOP CONNECTIONS
  - A. Weld or bolt at Contractor's option except when otherwise indicated or specified.
  - B. Shop portions of connections may be welded equivalent to any bolted connection specified if Engineer concurs.
  - C. Welded connections shall be as indicated or in accordance with acceptable alternative designs.

1. Welds of connection angles to beam webs shall conform to AISC Manual, Part 4, Tables III and IV, with particular regard for minimum web thickness. Provide longer connection angles or reinforce web as required.
  2. All butt-joint groove welds shall be complete penetration welds unless otherwise indicated and shall conform to the applicable standards in AISC Manual, Part 4, with special emphasis on maintaining root opening.
  - D. Bolted connections shall conform with AISC Manual, Part 4:
    1. All bolted connections shall be made with  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch bolts, nuts, and washers unless otherwise indicated or specified.
    2. Connections must be selected to support one-half the total uniform load capacity shown in the Allowable Uniform Load Tables, Part 2 of the AISC Manual, for the given beam, span and grade of steel specified.
    3. Use the minimum number of rows of bolts for beam connections so that the bottom row is at or below the centerline of the beam.
- 2.04 FIELD CONNECTIONS
- A. Provide with bolted connections unless otherwise indicated or specified.
  - B. Provide for field welding only when so indicated or when detail clearances make bolting impractical.
  - C. Bolted connections shall comply with Part 2.03 Paragraph D, this specification.
- 2.05 CONCRETE ANCHORS
- A. Manually expanded and adhesive anchor types.
  - B. Furnish sizes indicated and install to conform to manufacturer's printed instruction.
  - C. Carbon steel grades and surface plating (or galvanizing) shall be manufacturer's standard.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.
- 3.02 ERECTION
- A. Allow for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure safe, plumb, and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing and decking.
  - B. Field weld components indicated on Drawings and/or shop drawings.
  - C. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Architect/Engineer.
  - D. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed or galvanized, except surfaces to be in contact with concrete.
  - E. Grout under base plates as indicated. Cut off exposed edges of grout at 45 degrees along the edges of the base plates after grout has acquired its initial set.
  - F. Frame floor, roof openings greater than 12 inches with supplementary framing.
- 3.03 CONNECTIONS
- A. All bracing connections shall be bolted slip critical type. All other connections shall be pretensioned.
  - B. Where required for connection fit-up, bolt holes may be adjusted in one of the following manners: (flame cutting or flame enlargement of holes is not allowed):
    1. Reamed to AISC allowable maximum size for oversized holes.
    2. Holes may be filled with weld metal, ground smooth, and field-drilled.
    3. Other Engineer-approved methods.
  - C. Make welded connections as indicated and leave all erection bolts in place after completion of welding unless otherwise indicated. Reinforce connections when members requiring fillet welds are not in contact. Use backup bars or spacer bars on all butt welds where root opening exceeds  $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch. Remove all run-out tabs.
- 3.04 CONCRETE ANCHORS
- A. Install anchors to conform to manufacturer's printed instructions.
  - B. The hole tolerances, drill bits, and anchor installation torque shall be as per manufacturer's printed recommendations.

- 3.05 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
  - B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION 05120





## SECTION 06100

### ROUGH CARPENTRY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Framing with engineered wood products.
  - 3. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - 4. Wood furring.
  - 5. Subflooring and underlayment.
  - 6. Plywood backing panels.
  - 7. Building wrap.

##### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations for Engineered Wood Products: Obtain each type of engineered wood product through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Obtain each type of fire-retardant-treated wood product through one source from a single producer.

##### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels; place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of lumber grading agencies certified by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - 1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Wood Structural Panels:
  - 1. Plywood: DOC PS 1.

2. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.
3. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified but not less than thickness indicated.
4. Comply with "Code Plus" provisions in APA Form No. E30K, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial."
5. Factory mark panels according to indicated standard.

## 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP C2 lumber except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWP C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
  1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and one of the following:
    - a. Chromated copper arsenate (CCA).
    - b. Ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate (ACZA).
    - c. Ammoniacal, or amine, copper quat (ACQ).
    - d. Copper bis (dimethyldithiocarbamate) (CDDC).
    - e. Ammoniacal copper citrate (CC).
    - f. Copper azole, Type A (CBA-A).
    - g. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.
  2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark each treated item with the treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  3. Wood framing members less than 18 inches above grade.
  4. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs directly in contact with earth.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, provide materials that comply with performance requirements in AWP C20 lumber and AWP C27 plywood. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Use treatment for which chemical manufacturer publishes physical properties of treated wood after exposure to elevated temperatures, when tested by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664, for lumber and ASTM D 5516, for plywood
  2. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  3. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
  4. Use Interior Type A High Temperature (HT), unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

## 2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER

- A. General: Provide dimension lumber of grades indicated according to the American Lumber Standards Committee National Grading Rule provisions of the grading agency indicated.
- B. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction, Stud, or No. 2 grade.
- C. Exterior and Load-Bearing Walls Construction or No. 2 grade. **Reference Structural Drawings for additional information.**
- D. Ceiling Joists (Non-Load-Bearing): Construction or No. 2 grade. **Reference Structural Drawings for additional information.**

- E. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Construction or No. 1 grade.  
**Reference Structural Drawings for additional information.**

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 2. Blocking.
  - 3. Cants.
  - 4. Nailers.
  - 5. Furring.
  - 6. Grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction, Stud, or No. 2 grade lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.
- C. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.
- D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.6 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Veneer Lumber: A composite of wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
- B. Parallel-Strand Lumber: A composite of wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
- C. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units complying with APA PRI-400; depths and performance ratings not less than those indicated.
- D. Rim Boards: Performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401.

## 2.7 SHEATHING

- A. **Reference specification Section 061600.**

## 2.8 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire- retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inch thick.

## 2.9 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: CABO NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.10 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. General: Provide framing anchors made from metal indicated, of structural capacity, type, and size indicated, and as follows:
  1. Research/Evaluation Reports: Provide products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which model code research/evaluation reports exist that show compliance of metal framing anchors, for application indicated, with building code in effect for Project.
  2. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- B. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- D. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
  1. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
- E. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
  1. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
- F. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
  1. Strap Width: 1-1/2 inches.
  2. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
- G. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.062 inch thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- H. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch above base and with 2-inch- minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch thick.
- I. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
  1. Width: 3/4 inch.
  2. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
  3. Length: 16 inches.
- J. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- K. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- L. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick by 36 inches long.
- M. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.
- N. Wall Bracing: T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 1-1/8 inches wide by 9/16 inch deep by 0.034 inch thick with hemmed edges.
- O. Wall Bracing: Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch thick with hemmed edges.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. **Vapor Barrier over Wall Sheathing:** Asphalt-saturated organic felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (**No. 30 asphalt felt**), unperforated.
- B. **Vapor Barrier over Roof Sheathing: Tamko, TW Metal and Tile Underlayment. Self-Adhered.**

- C. Building Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.
- D. Sheathing Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape for sealing joints and penetrations in sheathing and recommended by sheathing manufacturer for use with type of sheathing required.
- E. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1- inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch ; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- F. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- G. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by both adhesive and panel manufacturers.
- H. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2- propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of rough carpentry or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- C. Apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.
- D. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. CABO NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Published requirements of metal framing anchor manufacturer.
  - 3. Table 23-II-B-1, "Nailing Schedule," and Table 23-II-B-2, "Wood Structural PanelRoof Sheathing Nailing Schedule," in the Uniform Building Code.
  - 4. Table 2305.2, "Fastening Schedule," in the BOCA National Building Code.
  - 5. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the Standard Building Code.
  - 6. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.
- E. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; predrill as required.
- F. Use finishing nails for exposed work, unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

#### 3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. Build anchor bolts into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, secure anchor bolts to formwork before concrete placement.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

#### 3.3 WOOD FRAMING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AFPA's "Manual for Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Do not splice structural members between supports.
- D. Where built-up beams or girders of 2-inch nominal- dimension lumber on edge are required, fasten together with 2 rows of 20d nails spaced not less than 32 inches o.c. Locate one row near top edge and other near bottom edge.

#### 3.4 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Arrange studs so wide face of stud is perpendicular to direction of wall or partition and narrow face is parallel. Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load- bearing partitions. Anchor or nail plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal-size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches high, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- C. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level and at ceiling line of top story. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted wood blocks of 2-inch nominal- thick lumber of same width as framing members.
- D. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Set headers on edge and support on jamb studs.
  - 1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs with headers not less than 4-inch nominal depth for openings 48 inches and less in width, 6-inch nominal depth for openings 48 to 72 inches in width, 8-inch nominal depth for openings 72 to 120 inches in width, and not less than 10-inch nominal depth for openings 10 to 12 feet in width.
  - 2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 72 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated.
- E. Provide bracing in exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner, full-story height, unless otherwise indicated. Provide one of the following:
- F. Provide bracing in walls, at locations indicated, full-story height, unless otherwise indicated. Provide one of the following:
  - 1. Diagonal bracing at 45-degree angle using let-in 1-by-4-inch nominal- size boards.
  - 2. Diagonal bracing at 45-degree angle using metal bracing.
  - 3. Plywood panels not less than 48 by 96 inches applied vertically.
  - 4. Oriented-strand-board panels not less than 48 by 96 inches applied vertically.
  - 5. Particleboard sheathing panels not less than 48 by 96 inches applied vertically.
  - 6. In lieu of bracing at corners or at locations indicated, continuous gypsum sheathing may be provided in panels not less than 48 by 96 inches applied vertically.
  - 7. In lieu of bracing at corners or at locations indicated, continuous fiberboard sheathing, intermediate type, may be provided in panels not less than 48 by 96 inches applied vertically.

#### 3.5 CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
  - 1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal- size or 2-by-4- inch nominal- size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.

- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
    - 1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
    - 2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
  - C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide 1-by-6-inch nominal-size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
  - D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions, if any.
- 3.6 VAPOR BARRIER AT ROOF APPLICATION
- A. Apply building paper horizontally with 2-inch overlap and 6-inch end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails. Cover upstanding flashing with 4-inch overlap.
- 3.7 VAPOR BARRIER AT WALL APPLICATION
- A. Cover wall sheathing with building wrap as indicated. **Fluid-applied air and water-resistive barrier at EIFS (reference Section 07241)**
    - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 2. Cover upstanding flashing with 4-inch overlap.
    - 3. Seal seams, edges, and penetrations with tape.
    - 4. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

END OF SECTION 06100





SECTION 06114  
WOOD BLOCKING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Blocking in wall and roof openings.
- B. Wood furring and grounds.
- C. Concealed wood blocking for support of toilet and bath accessories, wall cabinets, and wood trim.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Blocking: Minimum stud grade.
- B. Roof Curbs and Cants: Treated lumber.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors:
  - 1. Fasteners: Hot-dipped galvanized steel for high humidity and treated wood locations, unfinished steel elsewhere.
  - 2. Anchors: Toggle bolt type for anchorage to hollow masonry. Expansion shield and lag bolt type for anchorage to solid masonry or concrete. Bolt or ballistic fastener for anchorages to steel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 FRAMING

- A. Set members level and plumb, in correct position.
- B. Place horizontal members flat, crown side up.
- C. Construct curb members of single pieces.
- D. Space framing and furring 16 inches o.c.
- E. Curb roof openings except where prefabricated curbs are provided. Form corners by alternating lapping side members.
- F. Coordinate curb installation with installation of decking and support of deck openings, roofing vapor retardant, and parapet construction.

3.02 SCHEDULES

- A. Concealed Blocking: Provide fire resistant wood blocking within all cavity wall (wood stud framing) construction for attachment of all wall mounted work.
- B. Where allowed, (reference stud wall construction) provide adequate blocking in stud walls of all group toilets to allow through – bolting of all wall mounted toilet accessories and toilet partitions. Attach blocking to the wall framing with bolt or lag screw only. Nailing not acceptable.
- C. Provide CCA-treated wood at exterior locations, when used in association with the roofing system or when in contact with concrete or masonry.

END OF SECTION 06114



## SECTION 061600

### SHEATHING (ZIP SYSTEM®)

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. Combination wall sheathing, water resistive barrier and air barrier.
2. Combination roof sheathing and roof underlayment.
3. Self-adhering flexible flashing.
4. Liquid-applied flashing membrane.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

###### A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. For panels with integral water resistive barrier, include data on air/-moisture-infiltration protection based on testing according to referencing standards.

##### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

###### A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Capable of demonstrating that all wood procurement operations are conducted in accordance with procedures and policies of the Sustainable Forestry Initiative (SFI) Program.

###### B. Code Compliance: Comply with requirements of the following:

1. International Code Council (ICC).

##### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

###### A. Outdoor Storage. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations and as follows:

1. Set panel bundles on supports to keep off ground.
2. Cover panels loosely with waterproof protective material.
3. Anchor covers on top of stack, but keep away from sides and bottom to assure adequate air circulation.
4. When high moisture conditions exist, cut banding on panel stack to prevent edge damage.

##### 1.5 WARRANTY

###### A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sheathing system that fail due to manufacturing defects within specified warranty period.

1. Construction Period Warranty: Manufacturer shall warrant the panels and tape for weather exposure for a period of 180 days from installation.
2. System Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

###### A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2-10.
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated. Thickness shall satisfy minimum and maximum requirements for referenced performance category.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

## 2.3 COMBINATION WALL SHEATHING, AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: With integral water-resistive barrier, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Huber Engineered Woods LLC; ZIP System® Wall Sheathing or a comparable product
  - 2. Span Rating, Panel Grade and Performance Category: Not less than **32/16; Structural 1, 1/2 Performance Category**.
  - 3. Edge Profile: **Square edge**.
  - 4. Provide fastening guide on top panel surface with pre-spaced fastening symbols for 16-inches on centers spacing.
  - 5. Performance Standard: DOC PS2-10 and ICC-ES ESR-1474.
  - 6. Factory laminated integral water-resistive barrier facer.
  - 7. Perm Rating of Integral Water-Resistive Barrier: 12-16 perms.
  - 8. Assembly maximum air leakage of 0.0072 cfm/sq. ft. infiltration and 0.0023 cfm/ sq. ft. exfiltration at a pressure differential of 1.57 (psf 75 Pa).
  - 9. Exposure Time: Designed to resist weather exposure for 180 days.

## 2.4 COMBINATION ROOF SHEATHING AND ROOF UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Oriented-Strand-Board Roof Sheathing: **With integral water-resistive barrier, Exposure 1, Structural I** sheathing.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Huber Engineered Woods LLC; ZIP System® Roof and Wall Sheathing or a comparable product
  - 2. Span Rating, Panel Grade and Performance Category: Not less than **40/20; Structural 1; 5/8 Performance Category**.
  - 3. Edge Profile: **Square edge**.
  - 4. Provide fastening guide on top panel surface with pre-spaced fastening symbols for 16-inches and 24-inches on center spacing.
  - 5. Performance Standard: DOC PS2-10 and ICC-ES ESR-1473.
  - 6. Factory laminated integral roofing underlayment facer.
  - 7. Exposure Time: Designed to resist weather exposure for 180 days.
- B. Panel Edge Clips: Provide panel edge clips approved for application in accordance with code approvals and panel manufacturer's written instructions.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type that comply with requirements specified in this article by the authority having jurisdiction, International Building Code, International Residential Code, Wood Frame Construction manual, and National Design Specification.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering Seam and Flashing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, self-adhering, cold-applied, proprietary seam tape consisting of polyolefin film with acrylic adhesive.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements provide Huber Engineered Woods; ZIP System® Seam and Flashing Tape or a comparable product
  - 2. Thickness: 0.012 inch.
  - 3. Width: 3.75 inch and 6 inch.

4. Code Compliance: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. "AC148 - Acceptance Criteria for Flexible Flashing Materials."
  5. International Code Council (ICC), ICC-ES ESR2227.
  6. American Architectural Manufacturer's Association; AAMA 711.
- B. Liquid-Applied Flashing Membrane: Gun-grade, cold-applied, silyl-terminated polyether (STPE) liquid flashing membrane compatible with sheathing/weather barrier and self-adhering seam and flashing tape, and tested as part of an assembly meeting performance requirements. Follow manufacturer's recommendation for integration with self-adhering seam and flashing tape.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Huber Engineered Woods; ZIP System® Liquid Flash or a comparable product
  2. Hardness, Shore A, ASTM C 661: 40 to 45.
  3. Total Solids: 99 percent.
  4. Tensile Strength, ASTM D 412: 75 psi (517 kPa).
- C. Self-Adhering Flexible Flashing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, self-adhering, cold-applied, flexible flashing tape consisting of a flexible acrylic foam backing with acrylic adhesive.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements provide Huber Engineered Woods; ZIP System® Stretch Tape or a comparable product
  2. Thickness: 0.042 inch.
  3. Width: **6 inch and 10 inch.**
  4. Code Compliance: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. "AC148 - Acceptance Criteria for Flexible Flashing Materials."
  5. International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO), IAPMO ER365.
  6. American Architectural Manufacturer's Association; AAMA 711.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  1. Chapter 23 in the ICC's International Building Code.
  2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate **wall and roof** sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Only mechanically attached and drainable EIFS and exterior insulation should be used with ZIP System wall sheathing.

### 3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
    - a. Nail or staple to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
    - d. Install fasteners 3/8 inch to 1/2 inch from panel edges.
    - e. Space fasteners in compliance with requirements of authority having jurisdiction.
- 3.3 SHEATHING JOINT TREATMENT
  - A. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1. Apply seam tape to joints between sheathing panels.
    - 2. Utilize tape gun or hard rubber roller provided by manufacturer to ensure tape is completely adhered to substrates.
    - 3. When using liquid-applied flashing to seal sheathing joints follow manufacturer's recommendations for sealing panel seams.
- 3.4 FLEXIBLE OR LIQUID-APPLIED FLASHING INSTALLATION
  - A. Apply tape flexible flashing or membrane where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1. After flexible flashing tape has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.
    - 2. Width for flexible flashing: 6 inch.
    - 3. Apply liquid-applied flashing membrane at penetrations, gaps, and cracks to form continuous weathertight surface. Apply liquid membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions. Follow manufacturer's recommendation for integration with seam and flashing tape.
  - B. Apply liquid applied flashing membrane where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1. After liquid applied flashing membrane has been applied, tool wet product with a plastic spreader, putty knife, or similar tool to ensure that flashing is opaque and substrate is no longer visible.
    - 2. Minimum Thickness for Liquid Flashing: 12 mils.
    - 3. Apply liquid flashing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for integration with seam and flashing tape or flexible flashing tape.
  - C. Apply flexible flashing tape where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1. After flexible flashing tape has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.
    - 2. Width of flexible flashing: 6 inches or 10 inches.

END OF SECTION 061600

## SECTION 061753

### SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wood roof trusses.
  - 2. Wood floor trusses.
  - 3. Wood girder trusses.
  - 4. Wood truss bracing.
  - 5. Metal truss accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for roof sheathing and wall sheathing.
  - 2. Section 02281 "Termite Control" for site application of borate treatment to wood trusses.
  - 3. Section 06100 "Rough Carpentry".

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Trusses: Planar structural units consisting of metal-plate-connected members fabricated from dimension lumber and cut and assembled before delivery to Project site.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for trusses.
  - 1. Show location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required.
  - 2. Indicate sizes, stress grades, and species of lumber.
  - 3. Indicate locations of permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
  - 4. Indicate locations, sizes, and materials for permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
  - 5. Indicate type, size, material, finish, design values, orientation, and location of metal connector plates.
  - 6. Show splice details and bearing details.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For **metal connector-plate manufacturer**.
- B. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum specific gravity. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and specific gravity.
- C. Product Certificates: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses, signed by officer of truss fabricating firm.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Wood-preserved-treated lumber.
  - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - 3. Metal-plate connectors.
  - 4. Metal truss accessories.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Metal Connector-Plate Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 for manufacture of connector plates.
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.

2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  - B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that **[participates in a recognized quality-assurance program that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 and that involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction] [and] [is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body]**.
  - C. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Handle and store trusses to comply with recommendations in TPI BCSI, "Building Component Safety Information: Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining, & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
    1. Store trusses flat, off of ground, and adequately supported to prevent lateral bending.
    2. Protect trusses from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
    3. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
  - B. Inspect trusses showing discoloration, corrosion, or other evidence of deterioration. Discard and replace trusses that are damaged or defective.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal-plate-connected wood trusses capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.
  1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  2. Maximum Deflection Under Design Loads:
    - a. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of **1/360** of span.
    - b. Floor Trusses: Vertical deflection of **1/480** of span.
- C. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of the following publications:
  1. TPI 1, "National Design Standard for Metal Plate Connected Wood Truss Construction."
  2. TPI DSB, "Recommended Design Specification for Temporary Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
  3. TPI BCSI, "Building Component Safety Information: Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining, & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
- D. Wood Structural Design Standard: Comply with applicable requirements in AF&PA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."

### 2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER

- A. Certified Wood: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses **and permanent bracing**, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- B. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S.
  4. Provide dry lumber with **19** percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- C. Minimum Chord Size for Roof Trusses: **2 by 4 inches nominal for both top and bottom chords.**
- D. Permanent Bracing: Provide wood bracing that complies with requirements for miscellaneous lumber in **Section 06100 "Rough Carpentry."**



## 2.3 METAL CONNECTOR PLATES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**:
1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.; an ITW company.
  2. Cherokee Metal Products, Inc.; Masengill Machinery Company.
  3. CompuTrus, Inc.
  4. Eagle Metal Products.
  5. Jager Building Systems, Inc.; a Tembec/SGF Rexfor company.
  6. MiTek Industries, Inc.; a subsidiary of Berkshire Hathaway Inc.
  7. Robbins Engineering, Inc.
  8. Truswal Systems Corporation; an ITW company.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain metal connector plates from single manufacturer.
- C. General: Fabricate connector plates to comply with TPI 1.
- D. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G60 (Z180) coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick.
1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Hot-Dip Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 (Z550) coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick.
1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.

## 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Provide fasteners for use with metal framing anchors that comply with written recommendations of metal framing manufacturer.
  2. Where trusses are exposed to weather, in ground contact, made from pressure-preservative treated wood, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners **with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M**.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

## 2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  2. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  3. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
  4. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  5. USP Structural Connectors.
- C. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer that meet or exceed those **of products of manufacturers listed**. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.
1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Hot-Dip Heavy-Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 (Z550) coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) thick.
1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.
- F. Truss Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) thick. **Tie fastens to one side of truss, top plates, and side of stud below.**
- G. Truss Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) wide by 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Tie fits over top of truss and fastens to both sides of truss, top plates, and one side of stud below.

- H. Roof Truss Clips: Angle clips for bracing bottom chord of roof trusses at non-load-bearing walls, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) thick. Clip is fastened to truss through slotted holes to allow for truss deflection.
- I. Floor Truss Hangers: U-shaped hangers, full depth of floor truss, with 1-3/4-inch- (44-mm-) long seat; formed from metal strap 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
- J. Roof Truss Bracing/Spacers: U-shaped channels, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 1 inch (25 mm) deep by 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, made to fit between two adjacent trusses and accurately space them apart, and with tabs having metal teeth for fastening to trusses.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Cut truss members to accurate lengths, angles, and sizes to produce close-fitting joints.
- B. Fabricate metal connector plates to sizes, configurations, thicknesses, and anchorage details required to withstand design loads for types of joint designs indicated.
- C. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated; use jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances in TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
  - 1. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances in TPI 1.
- D. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously in both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform special inspections.
  - 1. Provide special inspector with access to fabricator's documentation of detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures that provide a basis for inspection control of the workmanship and the fabricator's ability to conform to approved construction documents and referenced standards.
  - 2. Provide special inspector with access to places where wood trusses are being fabricated to perform inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that special inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
- B. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
- C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
- D. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
- E. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
- F. Space trusses 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.; adjust and align trusses in location before permanently fastening.
- G. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchors according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
- H. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
  - 1. Anchor trusses to girder trusses as indicated.
- I. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
- J. Install bracing to comply with **Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."**
  - 1. Install and fasten strongback bracing vertically against vertical web of parallel-chord floor trusses at centers indicated.
- K. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.
- L. Do not alter trusses in field. Do not cut, drill, notch, or remove truss members.
- M. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not meet requirements.

1. Damaged trusses may be repaired according to truss repair details signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for truss design, when approved by Architect.
- 3.2 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION
- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
  - B. Protect wood trusses from weather. If, despite protection, wood trusses become wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
  - C. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - D. Protective Coating: Clean and prepare exposed surfaces of metal connector plates. Brush apply primer, when part of coating system, and one coat of protective coating.
    1. Apply materials to provide minimum dry film thickness recommended by coating system manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 061753



SECTION 06200  
FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Finish carpentry items, other than shop prefabricated casework.
  - B. Hardware and attachment accessories.
- 1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Perform work in accordance with AWI Custom.
- 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Protect work from moisture damage.
- 1.04 FIELD MEASUREMENTS
  - A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings and as instructed by the manufacturer.
- 1.05 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate the work with plumbing and electrical rough-in, and installation of associated and adjacent components.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 LUMBER MATERIALS
  - A. Hardwood Lumber: Graded in accordance with AWI Custom; Reference schedule at the end of this section; **Plain Sliced Select White Birch species**, maximum moisture content of 6 percent; suitable for transparent finish.
- 2.02 FASTENERS
  - A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application; Galvanized finish in concealed locations and Brass or Chrome finish in exposed locations.
- 2.03 FABRICATION
  - A. Fabricate to AWI Custom standards.
  - B. Shop assemble work for delivery to site, permitting passage through building openings.
  - C. Fit exposed sheet material edges with 3/8 inch matching hardwood edging. Use one piece for full length only.
  - D. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.
- 2.04 SHOP FINISHING
  - A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
  - B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.
  - C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler which matches surrounding surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.
  - D. Seal, stain, and varnish exposed to view surfaces. Brush apply only.
  - E. Prime paint. Seal surfaces in contact with cementitious materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
  - A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
  - B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI Custom Quality Standard.
- B. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb, and level.
- C. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.
- D. Install components trim with nails, screws, bolts with blind fasteners or wall adhesive by gun application.
- E. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 SITE APPLIED WOOD TREATMENT

- A. Apply preservative treatment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Brush apply two coats of preservative treatment on wood in contact with cementitious materials, roofing and related metal flashings. Treat site-sawn cuts.
- C. Allow preservative to dry prior to erecting members.

3.04 PREPARATION FOR SITE FINISHING

- A. Site Finishing: Refer to Section 09900.
- B. Before installation, prime paint surfaces of items or assemblies to be in contact with cementitious materials.

3.05 SCHEDULE

- A. Interior:
  - 1. **Wood base, wall trim, interior window trim/sill, interior door trim: shall be solid wood (Plain Sliced Select White Birch) with eased exterior edges. 3/4" thick material with varying widths (reference drawings). Stain color to be selected.**

END OF SECTION 06200

SECTION 06410  
CUSTOM CASEWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Countertops, base and wall cabinets.
  - B. Cabinet hardware.
  - C. Prefinished surfaces and preparation for site finishing.
  - D. Preparation for installing utilities.
- 1.02 SUBMITTALS
- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles and elevations, assembly methods, joint details, fastening methods, accessory listings, hardware location, and schedule of finishes.
- 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS
- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years' documented experience.
- 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver, store and handle products to site.
  - B. Protect units from moisture damage.
- 1.05 FIELD MEASUREMENTS
- A. Verify that field measurements are as on shop drawings.
- 1.06 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate the work with plumbing and electrical rough-in.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Salina Planing Mill (Salina)
  - B. Cabinetry & Millwork Concepts (Topeka)
  - C. Wend-Wood (Wichita)
  - D. Kitchens Inc. (Dodge City)
  - E. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.
- 2.02 WOOD MATERIALS
- A. Hardwood Lumber: FAS and F1F by NHLA; Graded in accordance with AWI Premium Grade; average moisture content of 6 percent; species and cut to match existing.
- 2.03 SHEET MATERIALS
- A. Hardwood Plywood: S 51; graded in accordance with AWI, core materials of veneer, and lumber, type of glue recommended for application; face veneer and cuts as follows:
- | ITEM                        | FACE SPECIES   |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Drawer 'Box' Construction   | Birch(unless noted otherwise) - Per AWI Premium Grade. |
| Door Construction           | Select White Birch - Per AWI Premium Grade.            |
| Cabinet 'Body' Construction | Select White Birch - Per AWI Premium Grade.            |
| Backs                       | Select White Birch - Per AWI Premium Grade.            |
| Shelving                    | Select Whit Birch - Per AWI Premium Grade.             |

- B. High Performance particleboard Core:
  - 1. Particleboard to be ¾" thick of 45 lb. Density, and balanced construction with moisture Content not to exceed 8%. All particleboards shall meet or exceed the requirements for its type and classification under Commercial Standard CS-236-66, Federal Specifications LLL-B-800A, and ASTM D 1037-78.
  - 2. Particleboard shall meet the following performance requirements. Submit compliance data from the manufacturer prior to fabrication:
 

Screw Holding, Face	471 lbs.
Modulus of Rupture	2,400 psi.
Modulus of Elasticity	450,000 psi.
Internal Bond	90 psi.
Surface Hardness	900 lbs.
- C. Hardboard: Hardboard shall meet or exceed Commercial Standards CS-251 and Federal Specifications LLL-B-00810. Tempered hardboard ¼" thick, smooth both sides.

2.04 PLASTIC LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS AND BACKSPLASHES (WHERE IDENTIFIED)

- A. **Formica #3496-46 Belmonte Granite.**
- B. Reference Drawings for locations of plastic laminate

2.05 QUARTZ COUNTERTOPS AND BACKSPLASHES (WHERE IDENTIFIED)

- A. **Quartz Surfaces: Cambria**
- B. **Color: New Quay**
- C. Sheets to be 3 cm for horizontal applications and shall have eased edges. Backsplashes shall be 3 cm x 4" tall with eased top edges.
- D. Sheets are available in standard size of approximately 52 inches x 118 inches
- E. Physical properties shall conform to the manufacturer's standard specifications.
- F. The materials shall not be coated or laminated
- G. Installation shall be by a qualified and experienced installed in a professional manner, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Reference drawings for locations of granite.

2.06 LAMINATE MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Laminate: AWI, 0.048 inch General Purpose quality V32 grade; color, pattern, and surface texture as selected from "premium" color range, shall meet NEMA standards for vertical grade.
- B. Laminate Backing Sheet: 0.020 inch Backing Sheet grade, undecorated plastic laminate shall meet NEMA standards and be of a type and thickness to properly balance face finish.

2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: FS MMM-A-130 contact adhesive, type recommended by AWI and laminate manufacturer to suit application.
- B. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- C. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; approved finish in exposed locations.
- D. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.

2.07 HARDWARE

- A. Hinges: Blum #71B3580 Clip Top BluMotion; 110° operation; Quiet close type.
- B. Pulls: Elements, Stanton, square, zinc, (4 1/8" overall). Color: Matte Black.
- C. Drawer Slides: Tandum Plus BluMotion #563; Supplier verify maximum length allowable at cabinet.
- D. Adjustable Shelf Clips: Hafele 282.12.405.
- E. Cushion Bumpers: Hafele #356.21.428 – clear. Two on each door & drawer.
- F. Grommets: Hafele, Series #429, full range of colors. Quantity (10). Located per shop drawing review.
- G. **Countertop Supports: A&M Hardware, Inc. Must meet ADA. Submit for approval. Installed at countertop spans greater than 36" wide. Color: Black.**
- H. **Bathroom Vanity Supports: A&M Hardware, Inc., ADA Sink Supports. 2-total. Color: Black.**

2.08 FINISHING MATERIALS

- A. Stain, Varnish and Finishing Materials: As specified in Section 09900.



## 2.09 FABRICATION

- A. Shop assemble casework for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
- B. Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with 3/8 inch matching hardwood. Use one piece for full length only. No edge tape allowed.
- C. Cap exposed plastic laminate finish edges with material of same finish and pattern.
- D. Door and Drawer Fronts: 3/4 inch thick; overlay style.
- E. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.
- F. Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arrises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet from sink cut-outs.
- G. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.
- H. Provide cutouts for plumbing fixtures, inserts, appliances, outlet boxes, fixtures and fittings. Verify locations of cutouts from on-site dimensions. Seal contact surfaces of cut edges.

## 2.10 FINISHING

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.
- C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler, which matches surrounding surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.
- D. Seal, stain and varnish exposed to view surfaces.
- E. Seal, stain and varnish internal exposed to view and semi-concealed surfaces.
- F. Seal surfaces in contact with cementitious materials.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Set and secure casework in place; rigid, plumb, and level.
- B. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units and counter tops.
- D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- E. Secure cabinet and counter bases to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.
- F. Countersink anchorage devices at exposed locations. Conceal with solid wood plugs of species to match surrounding wood; finish flush with surrounding surfaces.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings and fixtures.

### 3.05 SCHEDULE

- A. Adjustable shelving longer than 34" to be 1" thick.

END OF SECTION 06410



## SECTION 07181

### WATER REPELLENT COATING

#### PART 1 – GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Water repellent coating applied to exterior exposed brick and masonry unit walls.

##### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Applied coating to repel moisture absorption in material being treated.

##### 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- B. Protect coating liquid from freezing.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not apply coating when ambient temperature is lower than 50 degrees F or higher than 100 degrees F.

#### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. HYDROZO - Clear Double 7.
- B. ProSoCo Sure Klean Weather Seal.
- C. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Coating: Silane; containing 12 percent minimum solids.

#### PART 3 – EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify joint sealants are installed and cured.
- B. Verify surfaces to be coated are dry, clean, and free of efflorescence, oil, or other matter detrimental to application of coating.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Delay work until masonry mortar concrete substrate is cured a minimum of 5 days.
- B. Remove loose particles and foreign matter.
- C. Remove oil or foreign substance with a chemical solvent which will not affect coating.
- D. Scrub and rinse surfaces with water and let dry.

##### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply coating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply at a rate of 80 sq. ft. per gallon by airless spray.
- C. Apply in one continuous, uniform coat.

END OF SECTION 07181



## SECTION 07191

### DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING

#### 1.01 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE AT FLOOR SLABS

- A. Furnish and install 15 mil. Visqueen under interior concrete slabs on grade. Lap and seal all seams; patch any punctures with a 6-inch minimum overlap.

END OF SECTION 07191



## SECTION 07212

### BOARD INSULATION

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Adhesive, sheet vapor and air barrier.
- B. Board insulation at roof.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D2842 - Water Absorption of Rigid Cellular Plastics.
- B. ASTM C578 - Preformed Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation.
- C. ASTM E96 - Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.

##### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Materials of this Section shall provide continuity of thermal barrier at building enclosure elements.
- B. Materials of this Section shall provide continuity of vapor and air barrier at building enclosure elements.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, limitations.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special environmental conditions required for installation, installation techniques.

##### 1.05 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Dow Chemical Co.
- B. UCI, Inc.
- C. Amoco Foam Products
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation manufacturer for application.

##### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Tape: Polyethylene polyester self-adhering type, mesh reinforced, 2 inch wide.
- B. Insulation Fasteners: Impale clip of galvanized steel, to be mechanically fastened to surface to receive board insulation, length to suit insulation thickness and substrate, capable of securely and rigidly fastening insulation in place.

##### 2.04 ROOF INSULATION AT MAIN BUILDING PORTION

- A. Insulation: **Atlas, Polyisocyanurate, Acfoam Supreme**, Insulation Board:

Board Size:	Maximum 48 x 96 inch
Board Thickness:	4 inches minimum overall thickness, staggered joints if have more than 1-layer, minimum R value of 5.0 per inch or overall R 23.6 minimum.
Density:	25 psi
Thermal Conductivity:	R-Value of 5.0 per inch
Board Edges:	Square
Water Absorption:	ASTM C272, % by volume, maximum = 0.1.

2.05 UNDER SLAB PERIMETER/FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Insulation: **Styrofoam, Square Edge**, extruded polystyrene insulation board:

Board Size: 24 x 96 inch  
Board Thickness: 2 inches minimum overall thickness, minimum R value of 10.0.  
Density: 25 psi  
Board Edges: Square

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify site conditions.  
B. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation boards are dry and ready to receive insulation.  
C. Verify substrate surface is flat, free of honeycomb fin irregularities, materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.

3.02 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work.  
B. Do not permit Work to be damaged prior to covering insulation.

3.03 ROOF INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Ensure deck is clean and dry, vapor barrier is secure and tight.  
B. Insulation and installation must be coordinated, approved, and as recommended by roofing manufacturer.  
C. All insulation must be independently attached to the deck using manufacturer approved fasteners and plates, as per manufacturer's specifications, Attachments and spacing to achieve wind speed rating as identified in roofing spec section.  
D. Install Cover board and slip sheet as recommended by roofing manufacturer.

3.04 SCHEDULE

- A. Roof Insulation at Main Building Portion/Area: 4 inches thick Polyisocyanurate (R-23.6).  
B. Insulation under Perimeter Slab/Footing: 2 inch thick EPS.

END OF SECTION 07212



SECTION 07213  
BATT INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Batt insulation at exterior walls.
  - B. Batt insulation for filling perimeter window and door shim spaces, crevices in exterior wall and roof.
  - C. Sound batt insulation.
  - D. Vapor retarder.
- 1.02 REFERENCES
  - A. ASTM C665 - Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing.
  - B. ASTM E84 - Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - C. ASTM E136
- 1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
  - A. Materials of This Section: Provide continuity of thermal barrier at building enclosure in conjunction with thermal insulating materials in Section 07212. Overlap insulations to ensure complete thermal envelope at all exterior surfaces.
- 1.04 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate the work with all related Sections for installation of vapor retarder and other forms of insulation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MANUFACTURERS - INSULATION MATERIALS
  - A. OWENS-CORNING FIBERGLASS Product - thermal batt insulation.
    - 1. Sound Attenuation batt insulation.
    - 2. Flame Spread 25, smoke developed 50, Fiberglass insulation and Facing
    - 3. Perm rating of .02.
  - B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.
- 2.02 MATERIALS
  - A. Batt Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed glass fiber batts; loose laid and taped, conforming to the following:
    - 1. Thermal Resistance: R-21 minimum at exterior walls. R-38 minimum at roof – reference drawings.
    - 2. Batt Size and Facing: 6" FSK (foil) at walls. 12" FSK (foil) at roof – reference drawings.
  - B. Sound Batt Insulation:
    - 1. Batt size: 3 1/2" and 6" – coordinate with wall thickness.
    - 2. Facing: Unfaced.
  - C. Tape: Self-adhering type as recommended by the manufacturer, mesh reinforced, 2 inches wide.

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
  - A. Verify site conditions.
  - B. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation are dry and ready to be installed.
- 3.02 INSTALLATION
  - A. Install insulation and vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - B. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
  - C. Fit insulation tight in spaces and tight to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of insulation.
  - D. Install with applied vapor retarder membrane facing warm side of building spaces. Lap ends and side flanges of membrane, caulk, or tape.
  - E. Tape seal butt ends, lapped flanges, and tears or cuts in membrane.

END OF SECTION 07213



## SECTION 07241

### EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS) with Moisture Drainage and an air and water-resistive barrier.

##### 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. 06100 Rough Carpentry
- B. 061600 Sheathing

##### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C578 – Preformed Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation.
- B. ASTM D2842 – Water Absorption of rigid Cellular Plastics.
- C. ASTM E84 – Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- D. EIMA Class PB(Exterior Insulation Manufacturers Association) – Guideline Specification for Exterior Insulation and Finish.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of General Requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate wall joint patterns, joint details, and molding profiles.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on system materials, product characteristics, performance criteria, and limitations.
- D. Samples: Submit one 4 x 4-inch size sample illustrating coating texture range for selection.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation required, installation techniques, and jointing requirements.

##### 1.05 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum of 5 years' documented experience and approved by manufacturer.

##### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver all Exterior Insulation and Finish System components and materials to the job site in the original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Inspect all Exterior Insulation and Finish System components and materials upon arrival for physical damage, freezing or overheating. Do not use questionable materials.
- C. Store all Exterior Insulation and Finish System components and materials at the jobsite in a cool, dry location, out of direct sunlight, protected from weather and other sources of damage. Maintain minimum and maximum storage temperature as stated in the product data sheets or specifications for the materials selected.
- D. Protect all products from inclement weather and direct sunlight.

##### 1.07 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Do not apply wet materials during inclement weather unless appropriate protection is provided. Protect materials from inclement weather until they are completely dry.
  - 2. Verify the minimum air and wall surface temperatures at the time of application as stated in the product data sheets or specifications for the materials selected.
  - 3. Maintain these temperatures with adequate air ventilation and circulation for a minimum of 24 hours (48 hours for Weatherlastic Finishes, Ameristone, TerraNeo and Limestone) thereafter, or until the products are completely dry.

##### 1.08 WARRANTIES

- A. Contractor, installer, and manufacturer shall warranty installed system for a period of 10 years beginning from the Date of Substantial Completion against all of the conditions indicated below. When notified in writing from the Owner, Contractor, installer, and manufacturer shall promptly, and without inconvenience and cost to the Owner, correct said deficiencies in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Paragraph 12.2.
  - 1. Faulty material and workmanship.
  - 2. Water infiltration.
  - 3. Peeling, cracking, flaking, chipping, discoloration, or excessive fading of finish coating.
  - 4. Failure of bond to substrate.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **DRYVIT Systems, Outsulation Plus MD with Panzer 15 reinforcing mesh.**
1. **Tan Colored EIFS: Match Sherwin Williams SW7542 Naturel.**
  2. **Black colored EIFS: Match Sherwin Williams SW6258 Tricorn Black.**
  3. **Green colored Entry Area Striped EIFS: Match Sherwin Williams SW2933 Greenhouse.**
- B. Substitutions: **No Substitutions Allowed.**

### 2.02 DESCRIPTION

- A. System Description:
1. The Dryvit Outsulation Plus MD System is an Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS) with Moisture Drainage; consisting of:
    - a. A fluid-applied air/water-resistive barrier.
    - b. Adhesive – installed in vertical ribbons to facilitate egress of incidental moisture.
    - c. Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) insulation board.
    - d. Base Coat.
    - e. Reinforcing Mesh.
    - f. Finish Coat.
- B. Materials:
1. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier.
    - a. Dryvit Backstop® NT™ fluid-applied noncementitious air/water-resistive barrier.
    - b. Dryvit Grid Tape™ open weave fiberglass mesh tape with pressure-sensitive adhesive available in rolls 102 mm (4 in) wide by 91 m (100 yds) long.
    - c. Dryvit Backstop® DMS sprayable single step air/water-resistive barrier and adhesive.
  2. Flashing:
    - a. AquaFlash® fluid-applied water-based polymer coating.
    - b. AquaFlash polyester reinforcing mesh.
    - c. Dryvit Flashing Tape™ rubberized asphalt adhesive available in rolls 102 mm (4 in), 152 mm (6in), and 229 mm (9 in) wide by 23 m (75 ft) long.
    - d. Dryvit Flashing Tape Surface Conditioner™ water-based surface conditioner and adhesion promoter.
  3. Drainage
    - a. Drainage Track UV treated PVC “J” channel perforated with weep holes, complying with ASTM D 1784 and ASTM C 1063.
    - b. Acceptable manufacturers of drainage tract.
      - 1) Starter Trac STWP – without drip edge by Plastic Components, Inc.
      - 2) Starter Trac STDE – with drip edge by Plastic Components, Inc.
      - 3) Universal Starter Track by Wind-lock Corporation
      - 4) Sloped Starter Strip with Drip by Vinyl Corp.
    - c. Dryvit Drainage Strip™ corrugated plastic strip.
    - d. Dryvit AP Adhesive™ urethane-based adhesive used to attach Drainage Track and Dryvit Drainage Strip to the sheathing.
  4. Adhesives
    - a. Liquid polymer-based adhesive field mixed with Portland cement.
      - 1) Dryvit Primus®
      - 2) Dryvit Genesis®
    - b. Ready mixed dry blend cementitious, copolymer-based adhesive field mixed with water.
      - 1) Dryvit Primus® DM
      - 2) Dryvit Genesis® DM
      - 3) Dryvit Genesis® DMS
      - 4) Rapidry DM™ 35-50
      - 5) Rapidry DM™ 50-75
  5. Insulation Board:
    - a. Expanded Polystyrene, two layers equaling a total of 6 inches thick, meeting Dryvit Specification DS131 and ASTM E 2430.
  6. Base Coat:
    - a. Liquid polymer-based adhesive field mixed with Portland cement.
      - 1) Dryvit Primus
      - 2) Dryvit Genesis

- b. Ready mixed dry blend cementitious, copolymer-based adhesive field mixed with water.
  - 1) Dryvit Primus DM
  - 2) Dryvit Genesis DM
  - 3) Dryvit Genesis DMS
  - 4) Rapidry DM 35-50
  - 5) Rapidry DM 50-75
7. Reinforcing Mesh
  - a. Open-weave, glass fiber fabric treated for compatibility with other system materials. **Panzer 15.**

Reinforcing Mesh <sup>1</sup> Weight g/m <sup>2</sup> (oz/yd)	Minimum Tensile Strength	EIMA Impact Classification	EIMA Impact Range Joules (in-lbs)		Impact Test Results Joules (in-lbs)	
<b>Panzer® 15*</b> - 509 (15)	71 g/cm (400 lbs/in)	Ultra High	>17	(>150)	18	(162)
Detail Mesh® Short Rolls – 146 (4.3)	27 g/cm (150 lbs/in)	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
Corner Mesh™ - 244 (7.2)	49 g/cm (274 lbs/in)	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
*Used in conjunction with Standard Mesh (recommended for areas exposed to high traffic). 1. Colored blue for product identification bearing the Dryvit logo.						

8. Finish:
  - a. Water-based, acrylic coating with integral color and texture, formulated with Dirt Pickup Resistance (DPR) chemistry
    - 1) **Texture shall be:**
      - a) **Sandpebble® Fine – fine pebble texture**
9. Coating, Primers, and Sealants:
  - a. Demandit
  - b. HDP Paint
  - c. Weatherlastic® Smooth
  - d. Tuscan Glaze™
  - e. Revyvit
  - f. Color Prime
  - g. Prymit®
  - h. SealClear™
- C. Jobsite-Mixed Materials:
  1. Portland cement: Verify is Type I or II, meeting ASTM C 150, white or gray in color, fresh and free of lumps.
  2. Water: Verify is clean and free of foreign matter.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  1. Verify access to electric power, clean water and a clean work area at the location where the Dryvit materials are to be applied.
  2. Verify that wall surface on which Exterior Insulation and Finish System is to be installed is a manufacturer-approved substrate:
    - a. Exterior fiber reinforced cement or calcium silicate boards, 1/4" USG, Durock. Joints shall receive mesh and latex fortified mortar.
  3. Verify the deflection of the substrate does not exceed 1/240 times the span.
  4. Verify substrate is flat within 6.4 mm (1/4 in) in a 1.2 m (4 ft) radius.
  5. Verify substrate is sound, dry, connections are tight; has no surface voids, projections, or other conditions that may interfere with the Exterior Insulation and Finish System installation or performance.
  6. Verify the slope of inclined surfaces are not less than 6:12 (27°), and the length of the slope does not exceed 305 mm (12 in).
  7. Verify metal roof flashings have been installed in accordance with Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA) standards.
  8. Verify all rough openings are flashed in accordance with the Exterior Insulation and Finish System manufacturer's installation details, or as otherwise necessary to prevent water penetration. Verify chimneys, balconies and decks have been properly flashed as necessary to prevent water penetration.
  9. Verify windows and doors are installed and flashed per manufacturer's requirements and installation details.
  10. Notify general contractor of all discrepancies prior to the installation of the Exterior Insulation and Finish System.

11. Verify that expansion joints are installed:
  - a. Where expansion joints occur in the substrate system.
  - b. Where building expansion joints occur.
  - c. At floor lines in wood frame construction.
  - d. At floor lines of non-wood framed buildings where significant movement is expected.
  - e. Where the Exterior Insulation and Finish System abuts dissimilar materials.
  - f. Where the substrate type changes.
  - g. Where prefabricated panels abut one another.
  - h. In continuous elevations at intervals not exceeding 23 m (75 ft).
  - i. Where significant structural movement occurs, such as changes in roof line, building shape or structural system.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect the Exterior Insulation and Finish System materials by permanent or temporary means from inclement weather and other sources of damage prior to, during, and following application until completely dry.
- B. Protect adjoining work and property during installation of the Exterior Insulation and Finish System.
- C. Prepare the substrate to be free of foreign materials, such as oil, dust, dirt, form-release agents, efflorescence, paint, wax, water repellants, moisture, frost, and any other condition that may inhibit adhesion.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION OF EPS INSULATION BOARD

- A. EPS must be obtained from an approved board supplier
- B. EPS must be manufactured in accordance with DS131
- C. Application
  1. Due to high stress at board joints and difficulty of maintaining dimensional tolerances in thicker slabs, the EPS shall be installed in layers.
  2. The top layer shall be limited to 4" maximum thickness.
    - a. The outer layer shall be at least ¾ inch thicker than the deepest reveal.
  3. Vertical and horizontal board joints must be offset a minimum of 8".
  4. The base layer of EPS shall be applied to the substrate or water resistive barrier coating with the Dryvit adhesive specified for the system.
  5. Allow adhesive to cure for 24 hours and then apply 2<sup>nd</sup> layer using the Dryvit adhesive specified for the system (ADEPS is not acceptable to use as an adhesive in this application).
  6. Continue application procedure in accordance with the appropriate application instructions for the specified system.
    - a. Standard Plus Reinforcing Mesh shall be applied as the minimum.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION OF EIFS SYSTEM

- A. Install the system in accordance with Dryvit Outsulation Plus MD System Application Instructions.
- B. Apply base coat sufficient to fully embed the mesh. The recommended method is to apply the base coat in two (2) passes.
- C. Apply sealant only to base coat treated with Dryvit Demandit or Color Prime coating.
- D. Install high impact mesh as specified at ground level, high traffic areas and other areas exposed to or susceptible to impact damage as designated on contract drawings.

### 3.05 SITE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Exterior Insulation and Finish System manufacturer assumes no responsibility for on-site inspections or application of its products.
- B. EIFS sub-contractor to certify in writing the quality of work performed relative to the substrate system, details, installation procedures, and as to the specific products used.
- C. EPS supplier, if requested, to certify in writing that the EPS meets the Exterior Insulation and Finish System manufacturer's specifications.
- D. The sealant contractor, if requested, to certify in writing that the sealant application is in accordance with the sealant manufacturer's and the Exterior Insulation and Finish System manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.06 CLEANING

- A. Remove all excess Exterior Insulation and Finish System materials from the job site by the contractor in accordance with contract provisions and as required by applicable law.
- B. Leave all surrounding areas, where the Exterior Insulation and Finish System has been applied, free of debris and foreign substances resulting from the EIFS sub-contractor's work.

END OF SECTION 07241

## SECTION 07611

### PRE-MANUFACTURED SHEET METAL

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. MBCI BattenLok Metal Roofing, associated integral flashings, and underlayment, or as approved equal.
- B. Flashings, Trim, and Counterflashings per manufacturer.
- C. Snow guards.
- D. Metal Soffit
- E. Metal Fascia

##### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Roofing (Main Building Area): Pre-coated standing seam metal roof, over self-adhesive membrane over ½" plywood over 4" (R23.6) polyisocyanurate insulation board, over 5/8" zip sheathing.
- B. Roofing (Entry Overhangs and Drive-Thru Canopy): Pre-coated standing seam metal roof, over self-adhesive membrane over 5/8" zip sheathing.
- C. Soffit: Pre-coated metal panels over support system.
- D. Fascia: Pre-coated metal over sheathing and framing.

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.

##### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with Manufacturer's specifications, recommendations and if not indicated SMACNA standard details and requirements.

##### 1.05 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Fabricator and Installer: Company specializing in sheet metal roof installations with minimum 5 years' documented experience.

##### 1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable code for Roof Assembly Fire Requirements.
- B. UL: Class C Fire Hazard Classification, UL 90 uplift.

##### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to prevent damage to material or finish.
- B. Stack preformed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- C. Prevent contact with materials which may cause discoloration or staining.

##### 1.08 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with installing associated metal flashings, trims, gutters, downspouts, etc., as the work of this section progresses.

##### 1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Provide roofers two year warranty covering materials (including insulation, flashings, trim, gutters, downspouts,) and workmanship.
- B. Provide manufacturer's 20-year warranty covering materials (including insulation, flashings, trim, gutters, and downspouts), and workmanship for weather tightness.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 METAL ROOF PANEL MANUFACTURERS

- A. MBCI, BattenLok, 16-inch wide with 2" ribs. **Color: True Black.**
- B. McElroy Metal, 238T Symmetrical Panel, 16-inch wide with 2" ribs. 24 ga. **Color (Kynar 500) Matte Black.**
- C. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements, or as approved by Architect.

### 2.02 METAL SOFFIT MANUFACTURERS

- A. MBCI Artisan Series, L12 w/ recessed beads at 4" o.c., 12" wide, lightly textured finish. **Color: True Black (Match cast stone, light color, at Main Entry soffit and Drive-Thru Canopy lower soffit area).** Provide support as recommended by manufacturer to avoid sagging.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements, or as approved by Architect.

### 2.03 METAL FASCIA

- A. Pre-Coated Galvanized Steel: ASTM A446, Grade A, G90 zinc coating; 24 gage core steel with beads at 4" o.c. horizontally, shop pre-coated with KYNAR 500 coating. **Color: True Black.**

### 2.04 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Pre-Coated Galvanized Steel: ASTM A446, Grade A, G90 zinc coating; 24 gage core steel, shop pre-coated with KYNAR 500 coating. **Color: True Black (Match cast stone, light color, at Main Entry soffit and Drive-Thru Canopy lower soffit area).**

### 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, with soft neoprene washers, per manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. **Underlayment: Tamko, TW Metal and Tile Underlayment.**
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin sized building paper.
- D. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- E. Protective Backing Paint: Zinc chromate alkyd.
- F. Sealant: Polyurethane type, manufactured by Bostic.
- G. Bedding Compound: Rubber-asphalt type.
- H. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586, Type I.
- I. **Eave (Ice Dam) Protection: Tamko, TW Metal and Tile Underlayment.**
- J. Solder: ASTM B32; 50/50 type.
- K. Flux: FS O-F-506.

### 2.06 SNOW AND ICE GUARDS

- A. Install "Snow Bar" (1-800-711-9724) snow guards in accordance with roof manufacturer and snow guard manufacturer, attachment, and spacing as recommended by Snow Bar. Reference roof plan for locations of guards.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify and coordinate site conditions which satisfy manufacturer's requirements.

### 3.02 ROOF PREPARATION

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Install surface mounted reglets true to lines and levels. Seal top of reglets with sealant.

### 3.03 ROOF INSTALLATION - EAVE (ICE DAM) PROTECTION

- A. Place eave edge metal flashings tight with fascia boards. Weather lap joints 2 inches and seal with plastic cement. Secure flange with nails spaced 12 inches oc.
- B. Apply rubberized asphalt/polyethylene sheet eave protection in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Apply lap cement at rate of approximately 1 1/4 gal/100 sq ft over underlayment starter strip.



- D. Starting from lower edge of starter strip, lay additional 36 inch wide strips of underlayment in lap cement, to produce a two ply membrane. Weather lap plies minimum 19 inches and nail in place. Lap ends minimum 6 inches. Stagger end joints of each consecutive ply.
  - E. Extend eave protection membrane minimum 4 feet upslope beyond interior face of exterior wall.
- 3.04 ROOF INSTALLATION
- A. Conform to drawing details as provided and recommended by manufacturer.
  - B. Apply underlayment in single layer laid perpendicular to slope; weather lap edges 2 inches and nail in place. Minimize nail quantity.
  - C. Apply slip sheet in one layer, laid loose.
  - D. Cleat and seam all joints.
  - E. Use bedding compound for joints between metal and bitumen or metal and felts.
  - F. Stagger transverse joints of roofing sheets.
  - G. Provide integral gutters, downspouts, fascias, and metal splash pans as required.
  - H. Back paint surfaces in contact with dissimilar materials.
- 3.05 STANDING SEAM ROOFING
- A. Conform to manufacturer's details, recommendations, and specifications.
  - B. Space standing seams at 16 inches oc.
  - C. Lay sheets with long dimension perpendicular to eaves. Apply pans beginning at eaves.
  - D. Lock cleats into seams and flatten.
  - F. Terminate standing seams at ridge, eaves, and hips per manufacturer's details and recommendations.
- 3.06 ERECTION – WALL AND FASCIA SYSTEMS
- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - B. Exercise care when cutting pre-finished material to ensure cuttings do not remain on finish surface.
  - C. Fasten cladding system to structural supports, aligned level and plumb.
  - D. Locate end laps over supports. End laps minimum 2 inches. Place sidelaps over bearing.
  - E. Provide expansion joints where indicated.
  - F. Install sealant and gaskets to prevent weather penetration.
  - G. System: Free of rattles, noise due to thermal movement and wind whistles.
- 3.07 GUTTERS and FLASHINGS
- A. Refer to Section 07620.
- 3.08 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK
- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Do not permit traffic over unprotected roof surface.

END OF SECTION 07611



## SECTION 07620

### SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cap and sill flashings.
- B. Counterflashings at roof mounted equipment and vent stacks.
- C. Miscellaneous flashings and closure pieces.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.

##### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA standard details and requirements.

##### 1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Fabricator and Installer: Company specializing in sheet metal flashing work with three years documented experience.

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Stack preformed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- C. Prevent contact with materials which may cause discoloration or staining.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Fascia Material: 24 gage, pre-coated galvanized steel with beads at 4" o.c. horizontally with lightly textured finish. KYNAR. **Color: True Black.**
- B. Soffit Material: 24 gage, pre-coated galvanized steel similar to MBCI Artisan Series L12 with recessed beads at 4" o.c., 12" wide, lightly textured finish. KYNAR. **Color: True Black (Match cast stone, light color, at Main Entry soffit and Drive-Thru Canopy lower soffit area).** Provide support as recommended by manufacturer to avoid sagging.

##### 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Galvanized steel with soft neoprene washers.
- B. Underlayment: ASTM D2178, No. 15 asphalt saturated roofing felt.
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin sized building paper.
- D. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- E. Sealant: Polyurethane type, specified in Section 07900.
- F. Bedding Compound: Rubber-asphalt type.
- G. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586, Type II.
- H. Reglets: Recessed type, galvanized steel; face and ends covered with plastic tape.

##### 2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- B. Fabricate cleats of metal, same material as sheet, interlockable with sheet.
- C. Form pieces in longest possible lengths. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- D. Form material with flat lock seams.
- E. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam and/or solder for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- F. Fabricate vertical faces with bottom edge formed outward 1/4 inch and hemmed to form drip.
- G. Fabricate flashings to allow toe to extend 2 inches over roofing. Return and brake edges.

2.04 FINISH

- A. Exposed metal shall be pre-finished with Kynar finish color to be selected.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, or vents through roof are solidly set, reglets in place, and nailing strips located.
- B. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Install surface mounted reglets true to lines and levels. Seal top of reglets with sealant.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Conform to drawing details included in the SMACNA manual unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
- B. Insert flashings into reglets to form tight fit. Secure in place with lead wedges. Pack remaining spaces with lead wool. Seal flashings into reglets with sealant.
- C. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- D. Fit flashings tight in place. Make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.
- E. Seal metal joints watertight.

END OF SECTION 07620

## SECTION 07631

### GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Precoated galvanized or aluminum steel gutters and downspouts.

##### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 07620 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.

##### 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Stack preformed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope to drain.
- C. Prevent contact with materials during storage which may cause discoloration, staining, or damage.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Pre-Coated galvanized Steel: ASTM A361, G90 zinc coating; 24 gage, core steel, shop precoated with coating of color as selected.
- B. Pre-coated Aluminum: Kynar or baked enamel finish of .032".

##### 2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Gutters: 6"x6" (reference drawings for locations) 20' minimum length **E-style. Color: True Black.**
- B. Downspouts: 4x5. **Color: True Black.**

##### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchorage Devices: Type recommended by fabricator.
- B. Gutter Supports: Brackets and straps.
- C. Downspout Supports: Brackets and straps.
- D. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, finish to match gutters and downspouts
- E. Protective Backing Paint: Zinc chromate alkyd.

##### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Form gutters and downspouts of profiles indicated.
- B. Form sections square, true, and accurate in size, in maximum possible lengths, free of distortion or defects detrimental to appearance or performance. Allow for expansion at joints.
- C. Hem exposed edges of metal.
- D. Fabricate gutter and downspout accessories; seal watertight.

##### 2.05 FINISHES

- A. Apply bituminous protective backing on surfaces in contact with dissimilar materials.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.

##### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gutters, downspouts, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Join lengths with seams sealed watertight. Flash and seal gutters to downspouts and accessories.
- C. Slope gutters 1 inch per 24 feet.
- D. Seal metal joints watertight. Do not install seams above door or window locations.

END OF SECTION 07631



## SECTION 07900

### JOINT SEALERS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Preparing substrate surfaces.
  - B. Sealant and joint backing.
- 1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE
  - A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
  - B. Perform acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C919.
- 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS
  - A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
  - B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum years documented experience.
- 1.04 WARRANTY
  - A. Provide five year warranty.
  - B. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories which fail to achieve air tight seal, water tight seal, and exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 SEALANTS
  - A. Exterior vertical joints shall be filled with a one-part nonacid-curing silicone sealant. Sealant shall be Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, and providing 35% movement in both extension and compression for a total of 70% movement. Refer to Section 07900, E, for backing of joints. Provide a 25-year warranty.
    - 1. Acceptable products are as follows:
      - a. "Chem-Calk Ncure 2000"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
      - b. "Dow Corning 790"; Dow Corning Corp.
      - c. "Silglaze N SCS 2501"; General Electric Co.
      - d. "Silpruf SCS 2000"; General Electric Co.
      - e. "864"; Pecora Corp.
      - f. "Rhodorsil 5C"; Rhone-Poulenc Inc.
      - g. "Spectrum 1"; Tremco, Inc.
  - B. Interior joints in toilet rooms, showers, janitor closets, and other similar locations shall be sealed with a one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Sealant shall be type S, Grade NS, class 25 formulated with fungicide and intended for sealing interior joints with nonporous substrates and subject to in-service exposure to conditions of high humidity and temperature extremes.
    - 1. Acceptable products are as follows:
      - a. "Dow Corning 786"; Dow Corning Corp.
      - b. "SCS 1702 Sanitary"; General Electric Co.
      - c. "863 #345 White"; Pecora Corp.
      - d. "Rhodorsil 6B White"; Rhone-Poulenc Inc.
      - e. "Proglaze White"; Tremco Corp.
      - f. "OmniPlus"; Sonneborn Building Products Div.
  - C. Interior joints in locations other than those otherwise specified, including at where new and existing windows meet other materials, shall be sealed with manufacturer's standard, one part, nonsag, mildew-resistant, acrylic-emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, formulated to be paintable and recommended for exposed applications on interior and on protect exterior locations involving joint movement of not more than plus or minus 5%.
    - 1. Acceptable products are as follows:
      - a. "Chem-Calk 600"; Bostik Construction Products Div.

- b. "AC-20"; Pecora Corp.
    - c. "Sonolac"; Sonneborn Building Products Div.; Rexnord Chem.
  - D. At all sealant locations in fire rated assemblies provide manufacturer's standard fire-stopping sealant, with accessory materials, having fire-resistance ratings indicated as established by testing identical assemblies per ASTM E 814 by Underwriters Laboratory, Inc. or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1. Acceptable products are as follows:
      - a. "Dow Corning Fire Stop Foam"; Dow Corning Corp.
      - b. "Pensil 851"; General Electric Co.
      - c. "Fire Barrier CP-25 & 303"; 3M.
  - E. At all E.I.F.S. joints Closed-cell foam backer rod and sealants shall be installed. Contractor verify that all sealant materials are approved and published by E.I.F.S. manufacturer as compatible to system.
- 2.02 ACCESSORIES
- A. Primer: Non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.
  - B. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer; compatible with joint forming materials.
  - C. Joint Backing: ASTM D1056; round, closed or open cell polyethylene foam rod; oversized 30 to 50 percent larger than joint width.
  - D. Bond Breaker: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
- A. Verify that substrate surfaces and joint openings are ready to receive work.
  - B. Verify that joint backing and release tapes are compatible with sealant.
- 3.02 PREPARATION
- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter which might impair adhesion of sealant.
  - B. Clean and prime joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - D. Protect elements surrounding the work of this section from damage or disfiguration.
- 3.03 INSTALLATION
- A. Install sealant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - B. Measure joint dimensions and size materials to achieve required 2:1 width/depth ratios.
  - C. Install joint backing to achieve a neck dimension no greater than 1/3 of the joint width.
  - D. Install bond breaker where joint backing is not used.
  - E. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags.
  - F. Apply sealant within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- 3.04 SCHEDULE
- A. Interior: Caulk around all frames, windows, doors, openings, trim, etc., as required to seal or fill gaps, cracks, to make material transitions watertight and/or visually tight and finished.
  - B. Exterior: Caulk around all frames, windows, doors, openings, trim, material transitions etc., as required to seal or fill gaps, cracks, to make material transitions watertight and/or visually tight finished.
  - C. Paving: Caulk as required to seal or fill gaps, expansion joints, and cracks to make transitions watertight and/or visually tight.

END OF SECTION 07900



## SECTION 08211

### FLUSH WOOD DOORS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flush wood doors; flush and flush glazed configuration; fire rated and non-rated, **prefinished to match all woodwork.**

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Illustrate door opening criteria, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts required, special beveling, special blocking for hardware, identify cutouts for glazing, and louvers.
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics; factory machining criteria, and factory finishing criteria.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special installation instructions.

##### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with AWI Quality Standard Section 1300, Custom Grade.
- B. Finish doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standard, grades identified in schedule.

##### 1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

##### 1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire Door Construction: Conform to NFPA 252, UL 10B.
- B. Installed Fire Rated Door Assembly: Conform to NFPA 80 for fire rated class as scheduled.

##### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges if stored more than one week. Break seal on-site to permit ventilation.

##### 1.07 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

##### 1.08 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with door opening construction, door frame and door hardware installation.

##### 1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Provide warranty to the following term:
  - 1. Exterior Doors: 5 years.
  - 2. Interior Doors: Life of original installation.
- B. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, telegraphing core construction.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Masonite Architectural Doors
- B. VT Industries
- C. Lynden Door
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 DOOR TYPES

- A. Flush Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick; solid core construction, fire rated as indicated.

##### 2.03 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Core (Solid, Non-Rated): AWI Section 1300, Type PC-Particleboard.
- B. Core (Solid, Fire Rated): AWI Section 1300, Type FP or FM rating as required or indicated.

- 2.04 FLUSH DOOR AND FRAME/JAMB FACING
- A. Veneer Facing (Flush Interior Doors): AWI Custom quality **Plain Sliced Select White Birch** uniform grain. Door color/finish shall match all woodwork. Submit samples for Owner's approval.
- 2.05 ACCESSORIES
- A. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing Wood with metal clips for rated doors, mitered corners; prepared for countersink style screws.
- 2.06 FABRICATION
- A. Fabricate non-rated doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standards requirements.
- B. Fabricate fire rated doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standards and to UL requirements. Attach fire rating label to door.
- C. Astragals for Fire Rated Double Doors: Steel, T shaped, overlapping and recessed at face edge, specifically for double doors.
- D. Provide lock blocks at lock edge and top of door for closer hardware reinforcement.
- E. Vertical Exposed Edge of Stiles: Of same species as veneer facing. Hardwood for transparent finish.
- F. Fit door edge trim to edge of stiles after applying veneer facing.
- G. Bond edge banding to cores.
- H. Factory machine doors for finish hardware in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions. Do not machine for surface hardware. Provide solid blocking for through bolted hardware.
- I. Factory pre-fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings.
- J. Cut and configure exterior door edge to receive recessed weather-stripping devices. Provide edge clearances in accordance with AWI 1600.
- 2.07 FINISH
- A. Manufacturer's prefinished doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standard Section 1500 to the following finish designations: Prefinished Doors: Submit full line of actual samples for selection.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
- A. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- B. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.
- 3.02 INSTALLATION
- A. Install fire rated and non-rated doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standard, NFPA 80 and to Warnock Hersey requirements.
- B. Trim non-rated door width by cutting equally on both jamb edges.
- C. Trim door height by cutting bottom edges to a maximum of 3/4 inch (19 mm). Trim fire door height at bottom edge only, in accordance with fire rating requirements.
- D. Pilot drill screw and bolt holes. Use threaded through bolts for half surface hinges.
- E. Machine cut for hardware. Core for handsets and cylinders.
- F. Coordinate installation of glass and glazing.
- 3.03 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES
- A. Maximum Diagonal Distortion (Warp): 1/8 inch measured with straight edge or taught string, corner to corner, over an imaginary 36 x 84 inch surface area.
- B. Maximum Vertical Distortion (Bow): 1/8 inch measured with straight edge or taught string, top to bottom, over an imaginary 36 x 84 inch surface area.
- C. Maximum Width Distortion (Cup): 1/8 inch measured with straight edge or taught string, edge to edge, over an imaginary 36 x 84 inch surface area.
- 3.04 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust door for smooth and balanced door movement.

END OF SECTION 08211

## SECTION 08410

### ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum doors and frames.
- B. Vision glass and glass.
- C. Door hardware.
- D. Integral air and vapor barrier.
- E. Perimeter sealant.

##### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Aluminum entrances and storefront system includes tubular aluminum sections with supplementary internal support framing, shop fabricated, factory prefinished, vision glass, related flashings, anchorage, and attachment devices.

##### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design and size components to withstand dead and live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of wall as calculated in accordance with codes.
- B. Limit mullion deflection to flexure limit of glass; with full recovery of glazing materials.
- C. System to accommodate, without damage to components or deterioration of seals, movement within system, movement between system and peripheral construction, dynamic loading and release of loads, deflection of structural support framing.
- D. Limit air leakage through assembly to 0.06 cfm/min/sq. ft. of wall area, measured at a reference differential pressure across assembly of psf as measured in accordance with AAMA 501.
- E. Water Leakage: None, when measured in accordance with AAMA 501 with a test pressure difference of 2.86 lbs/sq. ft.
- F. Maintain continuous air and vapor barrier throughout assembly, primarily in line with inside pane of glass and heel bead of glazing compound.
- G. System to provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by a cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12-hour period without causing detrimental affect to system components.
- H. Drain water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channels, or migrating moisture occurring within system, to the exterior by a weep drainage network.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work and expansion and contraction joint location and details.

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- B. Protect pre-finished aluminum surfaces. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings which bond when exposed to sunlight or weather.

##### 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F during and 48 hours after installation.

##### 1.07 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

##### 1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Provide three-year warranty.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for complete system for failure to meet specified requirements.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Storefront System
  - 1. Manko - Product series – 2450 thermally broken, Door series – 150H Heavy Style.
  - 2. Other acceptable manufacturers offering equivalent Products.
    - a. Kawneer.
    - b. EFCO.
  - 3. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ANSI/ASTM B221; 6063 alloy, T5 temper. Color: **Black.**
- B. Steel Sections: ANSI/ASTM A36; shaped to suit mullion sections.
- C. Fasteners: Galvanized steel.

### 2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Frame: 4 1/2 x 2 inch nominal dimension; glazing stops; drainage holes; internal weep drainage system. **Complete with manufacturer's trim, clips, head receptor, and subsill with end dams.**
- B. Doors: 2 inches thick, 5-inch wide top rail, 5-inch wide vertical stiles, 10-inch wide bottom rail; square glazing stops.
- C. Flashings: Aluminum, finish to match mullion sections where exposed.

### 2.04 SEALED INSULATING GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Insulated Glass Units (Type IG): ASTM E774 and E773; double pane with edge seal; Low E; outer pane of 1/4 inch glass tinted at No. 3 side, inner pane of 1/4 inch glass; 1/2" air space, Argon filled. PPG **Solargray**
  - 1. IG Performance Requirements:
    - a. Light transmittance – 33%
    - b. U-value – Winter - .29
    - c. U-value – Summer - .27
    - d. Solar heat gain coefficient - .29

### 2.05 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant and Backing Materials: As specified in Section 07900.

### 2.06 HARDWARE

- A. Weather Stripping, Sill Sweep Strips, **Pemko 2005AT Threshold**, Piano Hinges, Tubular Pull Handles, Panic Device, Closer: Manufacturers' standard type to suit application, all provided by storefront manufacturer / supplier. **All finishes to be Black.**
- B. Cylinder locks by hardware supplier. **Door to be integrated with access control system.**

### 2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate components with minimum clearances and shim spacing around perimeter of assembly, yet enabling installation and dynamic movement of perimeter seal.
- B. Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints flush, hairline, and weatherproof.
- C. Prepare components to receive anchor devices. Fabricate anchors.
- D. Arrange fasteners and attachments to conceal from view.
- E. Prepare components with internal reinforcement for door hardware and door operator hinge hardware.
- F. Reinforce framing members for imposed loads.
- G. **Doors to be integrated with access control system.**

### 2.08 FINISHES

- A. Finish coatings to conform to AAMA
- B. **Exposed Aluminum Surfaces: Black.**

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify site opening conditions.
- B. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- C. Verify wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this Section.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and AAMA - Metal Curtain Wall, Window, Store Front and Entrance - Guide Specifications Manual.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings.
- G. Coordinate attachment and seal of perimeter air and vapor barrier materials.
- H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Set thresholds in bed of mastic and secure.
- J. Install hardware using templates provided.
- K. Install glass in accordance with Section 08800, to glazing method required to achieve performance criteria.
- L. Install perimeter sealant to method required to achieve performance criteria, backing materials, and installation criteria in accordance with Section 07900.

### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/16 inches per 10 feet, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating hardware and sash for smooth operation.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from prefinished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Remove excess sealant by method acceptable to sealant manufacturer.

### 3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work from damage.

END OF SECTION 08410



## SECTION 08520

### ALUMINUM WINDOWS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Extruded aluminum fixed windows; glass, shop glazed; panning and receptor systems; exterior surface applied muntin bars.
- B. Perimeter sealant.

##### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Windows: Tubular aluminum sections, shop fabricated, factory prefinished, vision glass, related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
- B. **Configuration: Fixed; all with manufacturer's standard panning and receptor systems; exterior surface applied muntin bars.**

##### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design and size components to withstand dead and live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of wall as measured in accordance with ASTM E330.
- B. Limit member deflection to 1/200; with full recovery of glazing materials.
- C. System to accommodate, without damage to components or deterioration of seals, movement between window and perimeter framing, deflection of lintel.
- D. Limit air leakage through assembly to 0.10 cfm/min/sq. ft. of wall area, measured at a reference differential pressure across assembly of 6 psf as measured in accordance with ASTM E283.
- E. Water Leakage: None, when measured in accordance with ASTM E331 with a test pressure difference of 9 lb./sq. ft.
- F. Maintain continuous air and vapor barrier throughout assembly, primarily in line with inside pane of glass and heel bead of glazing compound.
- G. Drain water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channels, or migrating moisture occurring within system, to the exterior by a weep drainage network.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate opening dimensions, framed opening tolerances, affected related work; installation requirements.
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, anchorage and fasteners, glass, internal drainage details.

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect prefinished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings which bond when exposed to sunlight or weather.

##### 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Maintain this minimum temperature during and after installation of sealants.

##### 1.07 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. MANCO Product
  - 1. 2450 Series fixed windows. **Windows shall have sub-sill with end dams head and jamb receptors. Include ¾" wide exterior surface adhered/applied muntin bars as indicated on Drawings.**
- B. Substitutions: Submit for approval under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221; 6063 alloy, T5 temper. Color: **Black**

## 2.03 GLASS AND GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Insulated Glass Units (Type IG): ASTM E774 and E773; double pane with edge seal; Low E; outer pane of 1/4 inch glass tinted at No. 3 side, inner pane of 1/4 inch glass; 1/2" air space, Argon filled. PPG **Solargray**.
  - 1. IG Performance Requirements:
    - a. Light transmittance – 33%
    - b. U-value – Winter - .29
    - c. U-value – Summer - .27
    - d. Solar heat gain coefficient - .29

## 2.04 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant and Backing Materials: As specified in Section 07900.

## 2.05 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate components with minimum clearances and shim spacing around perimeter of assembly, yet enabling installation and dynamic movement of perimeter seal.
- B. Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints flush, hairline, and weatherproof.
- C. Prepare components to receive anchor devices. Fabricate anchors.
- D. Arrange fasteners and attachments to ensure concealment from view.
- E. Prepare components with internal reinforcement for operating hardware.
- F. Provide internal reinforcement in mullions with galvanized steel members to maintain rigidity.
- G. Permit internal drainage weep holes and channels to migrate moisture to exterior. Provide internal drainage of glazing spaces to exterior through weep holes.

## 2.06 FINISHES

- A. Finish coatings to conform to AAMA 608.1.
- B. **Exterior Exposed Aluminum Surfaces: Black.**

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install window frames, glass and glazing and hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach window frame and shims to perimeter opening to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Align window plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- D. Install sill and sill end dams (i.e. Standard panning system).
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- F. Coordinate attachment and seal of perimeter air and vapor barrier materials.
- G. Install operating hardware.

## 3.02 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Level or Plumb: 0.06 inch every 3 ft non-cumulative or 0.5 inch per 100 ft., whichever is less.

## 3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation.

## 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from prefinished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Remove excess sealant by moderate use of mineral spirits or other solvent acceptable to sealant manuf.

END OF SECTION 08520



SECTION 08710  
DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Hardware for wood and hollow steel doors.
  - B. Cylinders for aluminum doors.
  - C. Thresholds.
  - D. Weatherstripping, seals and door gaskets.
- 1.02 ALLOWANCES
  - A. **Cash Allowance:** This contractor shall install and furnish all Finish Hardware not specified in other sections, such as millwork. This contractor shall allow the sum of **\$40,000.00** for the purchase and delivery of hardware only.
  - B. Allowance includes purchase and delivery of hardware only. Installation is included in the Contractor's Bid price, not the allowance. Any differential in the allowance listed and the original invoices from suppliers will be adjusted in the contract price.
- 1.03 REFERENCES
  - A. ANSI A117.1 - Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Accessible to and Usable by Physically Handicapped People.
- 1.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
  - A. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
- 1.05 QUALIFICATIONS
  - A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum 3 years' documented experience.
  - B. **Hardware Supplier: To be selected by General Contractor.**
- 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
  - B. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match hardware schedule.
  - C. Deliver keys to Owner by security shipment direct from hardware supplier.
- 1.07 WARRANTY
  - A. Provide five year warranty.
- 1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS
  - A. Provide special wrenches and tools applicable to each different or special hardware component.
  - B. Provide maintenance tools and accessories supplied by hardware component manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 KEYING
  - A. Door Locks: Master keyed. Include construction keying, and key as instructed by Owner.

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
  - A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
  - B. Verify that electric power is available to power operated devices and of the correct characteristics.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- C. Mounting heights for hardware from finished floor to center line of hardware item:
  - 1. Locksets: 40"
  - 2. Push/Pulls: 45"
  - 3. Dead Locks: 48"
  - 4. Exit Devices: 42"
- D. Thresholds not to exceed ½" in height.
- E. **Coordinate doors indicated on access control system. Reference drawings.**

END OF SECTION 08710

## SECTION 08800

### GLAZING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Glass and glazing for Sections referencing this Section for products and installation.

##### 1.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Glass and glazing materials of this Section shall provide continuity of building enclosure vapor and air barrier:
  - 1. To utilize the inner pane of multiple pane sealed units for the continuity of the air and vapor seal.
  - 2. Maintain continuous air and vapor barrier throughout glazed assembly from glass pane to heel bead of glazing sealant.
- B. Size glass to withstand dead loads and positive and negative live loads acting normal to plane of glass as calculated in accordance with IBC 2018 code.
- C. Limit glass deflection to 1/200 flexure limit of glass with full recovery of glazing materials, whichever is less.

##### 1.03 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 50 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

##### 1.04 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

##### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the Work with glazing frames, wall openings, and perimeter air and vapor seal to adjacent Work.

##### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for sealed glass units from seal failure, interpane dusting, or misting, reflective coating on mirrors, delamination of laminated glass and replacement of same.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FLAT GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Float Glass (Type FG): Clear, 1/4 inch thick minimum.
- B. Safety Glass (Type SG): Clear; fully tempered with horizontal tempering 1/4 inch thick minimum at all locations where glass is less than 18 inches above finished floor.
- C. Tinted Glass (Type TG): Float type, heat strengthened, light reducing, color (to be selected); 1/4 inch thick minimum.
- D. Wire Glass (Type WG): Clear, polished both sides diagonal mesh of woven stainless steel wire of 1/2 inch grid size; 1/4 inch thick.
- E. Mirror Glass (Type MG): Clear tempered safety type with copper and silver coating, organic overcoating, beveled edges, 1/4 inch thick minimum, and sizes, as indicated.
- F. Shatter Resistant Glass: (Type SRG): Clear laminated, 3/4 inch composite - 3 - 1/4-inch thick laminated panels, sizes as indicated.

##### 2.02 SEALED INSULATING GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Insulated Glass Units (Type IG): ASTM E774 and E773; double pane with edge seal; Low E; outer pane of 1/4 inch glass tinted at No. 3 side, inner pane of 1/4 inch glass; 1/2" air space, Argon filled. PPG Solargray.

- 1. IG Performance Requirements:

- a. Light transmittance – 33%
    - b. U-value – Winter - .29
    - c. U-value – Summer - .27
    - d. Solar heat gain coefficient - .29

### 2.03 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Exterior windows not shop installed shall be glazed with vinyl or neoprene gaskets, extruded elastic polybutene tape sealant, a combination of polysulphide base compound and elastic glazing compound, or a combination of extruded polysulphide tape, polysulphide base compound elastic glazing compound.
- B. Doors and interior stopped -in glass shall be glazed using putty or elastic glazing compound and stop beads.
- C. Exterior glazing of steel sash shall be DAP Metal Glaze. Interior glazing of steel sash shall be DAP Steel Sash Putty.

### 2.04 GLAZING ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Neoprene or Silicone, 80 - 90 Shore A durometer hardness, length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4 inch x width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch x height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Spacer Shims: Neoprene or Silicone, 50 - 60 Shore A durometer hardness, minimum 3 inch long x one half the height of the glazing stop x thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.
- C. Glazing Tape: Preformed butyl compound with integral resilient tube spacing device; 10 - 15 Shore A durometer hardness; coiled on release paper.
- D. Glazing Clips: Manufacturer's standard type.
- E. Mirror Attachment Accessories: Mirror adhesive, chemically compatible with mirror coating and wall substrate.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerance.
- B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions, and ready to receive glazing.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean contact surfaces with solvent and wipe dry.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant.
- D. Install glazing in accordance with Flat Jobbers Association Glazing Manual.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION - MIRRORS

- A. Set mirrors with adhesive, applied in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place plumb and level.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove glazing materials from finish surfaces. Remove labels after work is complete. Clean glass and mirrors.

### 3.05 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. After installation, mark pane with an "X" by using removable plastic tape or paste. Do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.

END OF SECTION 08800

## SECTION 09260

### GYPSUM BOARD SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wood stud wall framing.
- B. Acoustical insulation.
- C. Moisture resistant gypsum board.
- D. Acoustical gypsum board.
- E. Taped and sanded joint treatment, **Level 5 finish**.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C36 - Gypsum Wallboard.
- B. ASTM C475 - Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Wallboard Construction.
- C. ASTM C630 - Water Resistant Gypsum Backing Board.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS - GYPSUM BOARD SYSTEM

- A. National Gypsum Company.
- B. Other acceptable manufacturers offering equivalent products.
- C. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Reference Section 6110 Rough Carpentry.

##### 2.03 GYPSUM BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Fire Rated Moisture Resistant Gypsum Board (occurs at interior side of all perimeter walls and restrooms): ASTM C36; Gypsum, Type "X" fire resistive type, UL rated; 5/8 inch thick, maximum permissible length; ends square cut, tapered edges. Product – **National Gypsum Gold Bond XP Fireshield**.
- B. Acoustical Gypsum Board: (occurs at all interior walls except at restrooms) ASTM E90; type "X" fire resistive type, UL rated, 5/8 inch thick, maximum permissible length; ends square cut, tapered edges. Product equal to **National Gypsum Gold Bond Soundbreak XP Fire-Shield**.

##### 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Acoustical Insulation: glass fiber, friction fit type, unfaced, 3 1/2, or 6 inch thick.
- B. Corner Beads: Metal.
- C. Edge Trim: GA 201 and GA 216; Type L bead.
- D. Joint Materials: ASTM C475; reinforcing tape, joint compound, adhesive, and water.
- E. Fasteners: ASTM C1002, Type S12, W, and GA-216.
- F. Resilient channel: USG, RC-1 or equal.
- G. Molded Reveal Joints at wall areas not to exceed 30' in width: Fry Reglet, 1/4" x 1/4"; DRM – 25 – 25.
- H. **Lobby Area Molded Reveal Joints: Fry Reglet, 5/8" deep x 3/4" wide; DRM-25-25.**

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that site conditions are ready to receive work and opening dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

##### 3.02 WOOD STUD INSTALLATION

- A. Stud Spacing: 16 inches on center, unless noted otherwise.
- B. Refer to Drawings for indication of partitions, extend stud framing through the ceiling to the structure above, unless noted otherwise. Maintain clearance under structural building members to avoid deflection transfer to studs. Provide extended leg ceiling runners.
- C. Door Opening Framing: Install double studs at door frame jambs.

- D. Blocking: Nail wood blocking to studs or Bolt or screw steel channels to studs. Install blocking for support of plumbing fixtures, toilet partitions, wall cabinets, toilet accessories, and hardware.
- 3.03 WALL FURRING INSTALLATION
- A. Erect wall furring for direct attachment to concrete block walls.
  - B. Erect furring channels vertically; space maximum 16 inches on center, not more than 4 inches from floor and ceiling lines, abutting walls.
  - C. Install thermal insulation between furring channels directly attached to concrete masonry walls in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - D. Erect free-standing metal stud framing tight to concrete masonry walls, attached by adjustable furring brackets in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- 3.04 FURRING FOR FIRE RATINGS
- A. Install furring as required for fire resistance ratings indicated.
  - B. Columns in rated walls shall be wrapped independently from wall system.
- 3.05 CEILING FRAMING INSTALLATION
- A. Coordinate location of hangers with other work.
  - B. Install ceiling framing independent of walls, columns, and above ceiling work.
  - C. Reinforce openings in ceiling suspension system which interrupt main carrying channels or furring channels, with lateral channel bracing. Extend bracing minimum 24 inches past each end of openings.
  - D. Laterally brace entire suspension system.
- 3.06 ACOUSTICAL ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION
- A. Install resilient channels at maximum 12 inches on center. Locate joints over framing members.
  - B. Place acoustical insulation in partitions tight within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within or behind partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- 3.07 GYPSUM BOARD INSTALLATION
- A. Install gypsum board in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - B. Erect single layer standard gypsum board vertical, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
  - C. Erect single layer fire rated gypsum board vertically, with edges and ends occurring over firm bearing.
  - D. Use screws when fastening gypsum board to metal furring or framing.
  - E. Place second layer perpendicular to first layer. Offset joints of second layer from joints of first layer.
  - F. Erect exterior gypsum soffit board perpendicular to supports, with staggered end joints over supports.
  - G. Treat cut edges and holes in moisture resistant gypsum board and exterior gypsum board with sealant.
  - H. Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as directed. Install at approximately 30' intervals in walls. Coordinate locations with Architect.
  - I. Place corner beads at external corners as indicated. Use longest practical length. Place edge trim where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials as indicated.
  - J. Caulk at sound walls.
- 3.08 JOINT TREATMENT
- A. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready for finishes.
  - B. Feather coats onto adjoining surfaces so that camber is maximum 1/32.
  - C. Taping, filling, and sanding is not required at surfaces behind adhesive applied ceramic tile.
  - D. Tape joints and corners of cementitious backing board using cement based joint compound as recommended by the manufacturer.
  - E. **Level 5 finish.**
- 3.09 TOLERANCES
- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

END OF SECTION 09260

## SECTION 09306

### FLOOR AND WALL TILE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ceramic tile wall finish using the thinset application method.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Provide instructions for using adhesives and grouts.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples illustrating pattern, color variations, and grout color.

##### 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this section with minimum five years documented experience, approved by manufacturer, and preapproved by architect (20 days) prior to bid.

##### 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- B. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

##### 1.05 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install adhesives in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain 50 degrees F during installation of mortar materials.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 TILE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Daltile

##### 2.02 CERAMIC WALL TILE MATERIALS

- A. Porcelain Wall Tile: ANSI A137.1
  - 1. **Color 1: Daltile, Volume 1.0, Degrees Silver VL71, Size 12x12, Field Color.**
  - 2. **Color 2: Daltile, Volume 1.0, Amplify Black VL70, Size 6x6, Accent Color.**
  - 3. Reference Drawings for patterns and location of different colors

##### 2.03 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide one full carton of each color, style, or pattern.

##### 2.04 BASE MATERIALS

- A. Base: Match wall tile for moisture absorption, surface finish, and color:

##### 2.05 ADHESIVE MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Thinset bond type as recommended and/or manufactured by the tile manufacturer.

##### 2.06 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Mortar Materials: Portland cement, sand, latex additive, and water as recommended and/or manufactured by the tile manufacturer, color to be selected.

##### 2.07 TRIM: Provide Schluter trim to comply with the following requirements:

- A. External Corner: Schluter, Rondec. Clear Aluminum. Symmetrically rounded outer corners on walls. Depth to match tile thickness.
- B. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners.
- C. Exposed Top Edge: Schluter, Jolly. Clear Aluminum. Depth to match tile thickness.

##### 2.08 GROUT MIX

- A. Mix and proportion pre-mix grout materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. **TEC, Power Grout: 949 Silverado at field tile, 941 Raven at accent tile.**

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage or disfiguration.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- D. Apply sealer conditioner to substrate surfaces in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION - THINSET METHOD

- A. Install adhesive tile, thresholds, and grout in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and/or the TCA Handbook.
- B. Tile pattern to be determined. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Place Schlutter edge strips at exposed tile edges.
- D. Cut and fit tile tight to penetrations through tile. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor, base, and wall joints.
- E. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make joints watertight, without voids, cracks, excess mortar, or excess grout.
- F. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- G. Keep expansion, control joints free of adhesive or grout. Apply sealant to joints.
- H. Allow tile to set for a minimum of 48 hours prior to grouting.
- I. Grout tile joints.
- J. Apply sealant to junction of tile and dissimilar materials and junction of dissimilar planes.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

### 3.05 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

END OF SECTION 09306



## SECTION 09511

### SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system and perimeter trim.
- B. Acoustical tile.

##### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Installed System: Conform to Fed. Spec. SS-S-118B flame spread 25 or under UL Labeled for ceiling assembly.
- B. Suspension system to rigidly secure acoustical ceiling system including integral mechanical and electrical components with maximum deflection of 1/360.

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on metal grid system components, and acoustical units.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples illustrating material and finish of acoustical units.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples each, of suspension system main runner, cross runner, and edge trim.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

##### 1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Grid and Tile Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Conform to applicable code for combustibility requirements for materials.

##### 1.05 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F, and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

##### 1.06 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide 40 sq. ft. of extra tile to Owner. (Each type.)

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS - SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Armstrong Contract Interiors: Prelude XL, 15/16" exposed tee grid, 2 x 2 at all areas.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 SUSPENSION SYSTEM MATERIALS

- A. Grid Materials
  - 1. Heavy-Duty Classification, Hot dipped galvanized steel with baked polyester paint at all areas.
- B. Exposed Grid Surface Width: 15/16 inch.
- C. Grid Finish: White.
- D. Accessories: Stabilizer bars, clips, splices, edge moldings, hold down clips, and light protection hoods required for rated suspended grid systems.
- E. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.

##### 2.03 MANUFACTURERS - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Armstrong Contract Interiors
  - 1. Type 1 (All locations unless noted otherwise): Dune #1774, angled tegular edge, 2'x2'x5/8".
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.
- B. Manufacturers accessories for complete and finished assembly.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION - LAY-IN GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636 and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.
- B. Install system capable of supporting imposed loads to a deflection of 1/360 maximum.
- C. Lay out system to a balanced grid design with edge units no less than 50 percent of acoustical unit size.
- D. Locate system on room axis according to reflected plan.
- E. Install after major above ceiling work is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- F. Supply hangers or inserts for installation to Section with instructions for their correct placement.
- G. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- H. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
- I. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability. Support fixture loads by supplementary hangers located within 6 inches of each corner; or support components independently.
- J. Do not eccentrically load system, or produce rotation of runners.
- K. Install edge molding at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces, using longest practical lengths. Miter corners. Provide edge moldings at junctions with other interruptions.
- L. Form expansion joints as required or detailed. Form to accommodate plus or minus 1 inch movement. Maintain visual closure.
- M. Install light fixture boxes constructed of gypsum board above light fixtures in accordance with UL assembly requirements.
- N. Install additional hangers at fire rated ceiling assemblies, per manufacturer's instruction or UL tested assembly.
- O. Coordinate installation of suspension system with (but not limited too): Mechanical units, grilles, louvers, and lights.**

### 3.03 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Lay directional patterned units one way with pattern parallel to shortest room axis. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- D. Install units after above ceiling work is complete.
- E. Install acoustical units' level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
- F. Cut tile to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim. Field rabbet tile edge. Double cut and field paint exposed edges of tegular units.
- G. Lay acoustical insulation for a distance of 48 inches either side of acoustical partitions.
- H. Install hold-down clips to retain panels tight to grid system as required for to meet ratings.
- I. Coordinate installation of acoustical units with (but not limited too): Mechanical units, grilles, louvers, and lights.**

### 3.04 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.

END OF SECTION 09511

## SECTION 09650

### RESILIENT FLOORING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Luxury vinyl tile flooring.
  - B. Resilient base.
- 1.02 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical characteristics; sizes, patterns and colors available.
  - B. Samples: Submit one sample, illustrating color and pattern for each floor material.
  - C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and seaming recommendations.
- 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS
  - A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
  - B. Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this section with minimum five years documented experience, approved by manufacturer, and preapproved by architect 20 days prior to bid.
- 1.04 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Conform to code for flame/smoke rating requirements in accordance with ASTM E84.
- 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
  - A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Protect roll materials from damage.
- 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Store materials for three days prior to installation in area of installation to achieve temperature stability.
  - B. Maintain ambient temperature required by adhesive manufacturer three days prior to, during, and 24 hours after installation of materials.
- 1.07 MAINTENANCE DATA
  - A. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.
- 1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS
  - A. Provide 60 sq ft. of each flooring; 10 lineal feet of each base material specified.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MATERIALS – LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING
  - A. **J&J, Legend, 5mm.**
    - 1. **Color 1: Fiction 1059. Occurs with a mix of Colors 2 and 3 at all Hallways and Lobby. Occurs as a single color at Vestibule, both Work Rooms, Teller #106 (back area), all Restrooms and Breakroom.**
    - 2. **Color 2: Tale 1057. Occurs with a mix of Colors 1 and 3 at all Hallways and Lobby.**
    - 3. **Color 3: Saga 1055. Occurs with a mix of Colors 1 and 2 at all Hallways and Lobby.**
- 2.02 MATERIALS – RUBBER BASE
  - A. Roppe, Pinnacle Rubber Base, 4 inch tall x 1/8 inch thick, coved, premolded external corners, roll goods (**strips not allowed**). **Color: 114 Lunar Dust.**

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.
- B. Primers and Adhesives: Waterproof; **high moisture type** as recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- C. Edge Strips: Flooring material as approved.
- D. **Traxx Corporation, Liquishield 100, roll-on moisture barrier at all floor areas.**

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 TESTING OF CONCRETE SUBSTRATE

The following method shall be used to determine moisture content of slab at time of application. Three tests for the first 1,000 s.f. shall be completed at the area where highest moisture levels are suspected. One test for each additional 1,000 s.f. shall be completed throughout the remainder of the addition and remodeled areas. This test only measure the specific area tested at the time of the test and are not predictors of future substrate conditions.

- A. ASTM F-2170 in site Relative Humidity Test. Follow test procedures of manufacturer of testing equipment. Reading should be below 80%. If above 80%, use the next test method below. (Only if space is conditioned.)
  - 1. ASTM F-1869 Calcium Chloride Moisture Vapor Transmission Test. Follow test procedures of manufacturers of MVT kits. Results should be below 3 to 4 lbs/1,000 square feet/24 hours.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.
- B. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
- C. Vacuum clean substrate.
- D. Apply primer as recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION – LUXURY VINYL TILE FLOORING

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed.
- C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
- D. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
- E. Lay flooring with joints and seams parallel to building lines to produce symmetrical tile pattern.
- F. Allow minimum 1/2 full size tile width at room or area perimeter.
- G. Terminate flooring at centerline of door openings where adjacent floor finish is dissimilar.
- H. Install resilient edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, and where flooring terminates.
- I. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION - BASE

- A. Fit joints tight and vertical. Maintain minimum measurement of 18 inches between joints.
- B. Miter internal corners. At external corners, use premolded units or "V" cut back of base strip to 2/3 of its thickness and fold. At exposed ends, use premolded units.
- C. Install base on solid backing. Bond tight to wall and floor surfaces.
- D. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean all work as described in the General Requirements.
- B. Remove access adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
- C. Clean surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work.
- B. Prohibit traffic on floor finish for 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION 09650

## SECTION 09688

### CARPET - GLUE DOWN

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Carpet tile placed with glue down method.
- B. Accessories.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples illustrating color and pattern for each carpet material specified.
- C. Submit two samples of edge strip, material for each color specified.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

##### 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in installing carpet with minimum five years documented experience, approved by manufacturer, and preapproved by architect 20 days prior to bid.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Store materials for 3 days prior to installation in area of installation to achieve temperature stability.
- B. Maintain minimum 70 degrees F ambient temperature 1 day prior to, during and 24 hours after installation.

##### 1.05 MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning.

##### 1.06 EXTRA MATERIAL

- A. Provide 120 sq. ft. of carpeting of each type, color, and pattern specified. Must be full/uncut tiles and/or full width pieces.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS – CARPETING SCHEDULE

- A. **Patcraft, Collector, Proportion 00550, 18"x36", Ashlar pattern.**

##### 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sub-Floor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.
- B. Adhesive: Type compatible with carpet material and as recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- C. Edge Strips: Type, finish, color as selected.
- D. **Traxx Corporation, Liquishield 100, roll-on moisture barrier at all floor areas.**

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Remove subfloor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with subfloor filler.
- B. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
- C. Vacuum clean substrate.
- E. **Install Traxx Corporation, Liquishield 100, roll-on moisture barrier at all floor areas.**

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply carpet and adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Verify carpet match before cutting to ensure minimal variation between dye lots.
- C. Double cut carpet, to allow intended seam and pattern match. Make cuts straight, true, and unfrayed. Edge seam carpet at traffic areas.
- D. Locate seams in area of least traffic.
- E. Join seams by hot adhesive tape method. Form seams straight, not overlapped or peaked, and free of gaps.
- F. Lay carpet tight and flat on subfloor, well fastened at edges, with a uniform appearance. Provide monolithic color, pattern, and texture match within any one area.
- G. Do not change run of pile in any room where carpet is continuous through a wall opening into another room. Locate change of color or pattern between rooms under door centerline.
- H. Cut and fit carpet around interruptions.
- I. Bind cut edges where not concealed by edge strips.
- J. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.
- K. Where wall bases are scheduled, cut carpet tight to walls. Fit carpet tight to vertical interruptions, leaving no gaps.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.
- B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09688

## SECTION 09900

### PAINTING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation and field application of paints and coatings.

##### 1.02 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum years documented experience and approved by manufacturer.

##### 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- B. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- C. Container label to include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- D. Store paint materials at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is outside the humidity ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- C. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 45 degrees F for interiors; 50 degrees F for exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish and Finishes: 65 degrees F for interior or exterior, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Provide lighting level of 80 foot candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

##### 1.05 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. **Provide one full gallon of each color to owner.**

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer - Paint, Transparent Finishes, Stain, Primer Sealers, and Block Filler by SHERWIN-WILLIAMS or as approved equal.

##### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Coatings: Ready mixed, except field catalyzed coatings. Process pigments to a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating; good flow and brushing properties; capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
- B. Accessory Materials: Linseed oil, shellac, turpentine, paint thinners, and other materials not specifically indicated, but required to achieve the finishes specified, of commercial quality.
- C. Patching Materials: Latex filler.
- D. Fastener Head Cover Materials: Latex filler.

##### 2.03 FINISHES

- A. Refer to schedule at end of section for surface finish schedule.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and substrate conditions are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially affect proper application.

- C. Test shop applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove or mask electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- B. Correct defects and clean surfaces which affect work of this section. Remove existing coatings that exhibit loose surface defects.
- C. Seal with shellac and seal marks which may bleed through surface finishes.
- D. Impervious Surfaces: Remove mildew by scrubbing with solution of trisodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- E. Aluminum Surfaces Scheduled for Paint Finish: Remove surface contamination by steam or high pressure water. Remove oxidation with acid etch and solvent washing. Apply etching primer immediately following cleaning.
- F. Asphalt, Creosote, or Bituminous Surfaces Scheduled for Paint Finish: Remove foreign particles to permit adhesion of finishing materials. Apply compatible sealer or primer.
- G. Insulated Coverings: Remove dirt, grease, and oil from canvas and cotton.
- H. Concrete Floors: Remove contamination, acid etch, and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- I. Copper Surfaces Scheduled for a Paint Finish: Remove contamination by steam, high pressure water, or solvent washing. Apply vinyl etch primer immediately following cleaning.
- J. Copper Surfaces Scheduled for a Natural Oxidized Finish: Remove contamination by applying oxidizing solution of copper acetate and ammonium chloride in acetic acid. Rub on repeatedly for required effect. Once attained, rinse surfaces with clear water and allow to dry.
- K. Gypsum Board Surfaces: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.
- L. Galvanized Surfaces: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent. Apply coat of etching primer.
- M. Concrete and Unit Masonry Surfaces Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Remove dirt, loose mortar, scale, salt or alkali powder, and other foreign matter. Remove oil and grease with a solution of trisodium phosphate; rinse well and allow to dry. Remove stains caused by weathering of corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water. Allow to dry.
- N. Plaster Surfaces: Fill hairline cracks, small holes, and imperfections with latex patching plaster. Make smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Wash and neutralize high alkali surfaces.
- O. Uncoated Steel and Iron Surfaces: Remove grease, mill scale, weld splatter, dirt, and rust. Where heavy coatings of scale are evident, remove by hand, power tool wire brushing, or sandblasting; clean by washing with solvent. Apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts, and nuts are similarly cleaned. Spot prime paint after repairs.
- P. Shop Primed Steel Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.
- Q. Interior Wood Items Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after primer has dried; sand between coats.
- R. Interior Wood Items Scheduled to Receive Transparent Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to sealing, seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after sealer has dried; sand lightly between coats.
- S. Exterior Wood Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior caulking compound after prime coat has been applied.
- T. Exterior Wood Scheduled to Receive Transparent Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter; seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior caulking compound after sealer has been applied.
- U. Glue-Laminated Beams: Prior to finishing, wash surfaces with solvent, remove grease, and dirt.
- V. Wood and Metal Doors Scheduled for Painting: Seal top and bottom edges with primer.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. **Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.**
- B. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry.
- C. Apply each coat to uniform finish.
- D. Apply each coat of paint slightly darker than preceding coat unless otherwise approved.
- E. Sand wood and metal lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- F. Vacuum clean surfaces free of loose particles. Use tack cloth just prior to applying next coat.
- G. Allow applied coat to dry before next coat is applied.
- H. Where clear finishes are required, tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.
- I. Prime concealed surfaces of interior and exterior woodwork with primer paint.
- J. Prime concealed surfaces of interior woodwork scheduled to receive stain or varnish finish with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with mineral spirits.



3.04 FINISHING MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.
- B. Prime and paint insulated and exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, insulated and exposed ducts, hangers, brackets, collars, and supports except where items are prefinished.
- C. Paint interior surfaces of air ducts, and convector and baseboard heating cabinets that are visible through grilles and louvers with one coat of flat black paint, to visible surfaces. Paint dampers exposed behind louvers, grilles, and convector and baseboard cabinets to match face panels.
- D. Paint exposed conduit and electrical equipment occurring in finished areas.
- E. Paint both sides and edges of plywood backboards for electrical and telephone equipment before installing equipment.
- F. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material, which may constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

3.06 SCHEDULE

The following are for exterior and interior surfaces, and are all products of Sherwin-Williams. **Reference Finish Schedule on Plans for actual color.**

EXTERIOR SURFACES

- 1. WOOD (Excluding Plywood)
  - A. Flat Finish/Latex Base
    - 1st Coat: Y24W00020 - A-100 Exterior Oil Wood Primer White
    - 2nd Coat: A06W00051 - A-100 Exterior Latex Flat Extra White
    - 3rd Coat: A06W00051 - A-100 Exterior Latex Flat Extra White
- 2. WOOD (Plywood)
  - A. Flat Finish/Latex Base
    - 1st Coat: B51W08020 - Multi-Purpose Latex Primer White
    - 2nd Coat: A06W00051 - A-100 Exterior Latex Flat Extra White
    - 3rd Coat: A06W00051 - A-100 Exterior Latex Flat Extra White
- 3. FERROUS METAL
  - A. Painted (Gloss Finish/Alkyd Base)
    - 1st Coat: B50WZ0001 - Kem Kromik® Universal Metal Primer Off White
    - 2nd Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial 0 VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White
    - 3rd Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial 0 VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White
- 4. GALVANIZED and ALUMINUM METALS
  - A. Painted (Semi-Gloss Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial 0 VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White
    - 2nd Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial Zero VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss
    - 3rd Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial Zero VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss
- 5. CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS
  - A. Painted (Flat Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: A24W00200 - Loxon Block Surfacer White
    - 2nd Coat: A05W00451 - ConFlex XL High Build Coating Extra White
    - 3rd Coat: A05W00451 - ConFlex XL High Build Coating Extra White
- 6. CONCRETE
  - A. Painted (Flat Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: A24W8300 - Loxon Concrete and Masonry Primer
    - 2nd Coat: A24W00451 - Loxon® XP Waterproofing System Extra White
    - 3rd Coat: A24W00451 - Loxon® XP Waterproofing System Extra White
- 7. TRAFFIC AND PARKING LINE MARKING
  - A. Painted
    - 1st Coat: Fast Dry Lead Free Waterborne Traffic Marking Paint-WHITE
    - 2nd Coat: Fast Dry Lead Free Waterborne Traffic Marking Paint-WHITE

## INTERIOR SURFACES

### 1. WOOD AND PLYWOOD

- A. Painted (Eg-Shel Finish/Alkyd Base)
  - 1st Coat: B51W08020 - Multi-Purpose Latex Primer White
  - 2nd Coat: B31W00051 - ProClassic® WaterBorne Interior Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White
  - 3rd Coat: B31W00051 - ProClassic® WaterBorne Interior Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White
- B. Stained and Varnished (Clear Finish) Opened Grained Wood
  - 1st Coat: S64T00008 - Sher-Wood® Wiping Stain Clear
  - 2nd Coat: T77F00037 - Sher-Wood® Catalyzed Lacquer PreCat Medium Rubbed Effect
  - 3rd Coat: T77F00037 - Sher-Wood® Catalyzed Lacquer PreCat Medium Rubbed Effect

### 2. CONCRETE BLOCK (CMU)

- A. Painted (Semi-Gloss Finish/Epoxy Base)
  - 1st Coat: A24W00200 - Loxon® Block Surfacer White
  - 2nd Coat: B20W02651 - ProMar® 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel Extra White
  - 3rd Coat: B20W02651 - ProMar® 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel Extra White

### 3. GYPSUM WALLBOARD

- A. Painted (Eg-Shel Finish/Latex Base)
  - 1st Coat: B28W02600 - ProMar 200, Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer White
  - 2nd Coat: B20W02651 - ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel Extra White
  - 3rd Coat: B20W02651 - ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel Extra White
- B. Painted (Flat Finish/Latex Base)
  - 1st Coat: B28W02600 - ProMar 200, Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer White
  - 2nd Coat: B20W02651 - ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat Extra White
  - 3rd Coat: B20W02651 - ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat Extra White

### 4. FERROUS METAL

- A. Painted (Gloss Finish/Alkyd Base)
    - 1st Coat: B50WZ0001 - Kem Kromik® Universal Metal Primer Off White
    - 2nd Coat: B55W00101 - Direct-To-Metal Enamel Pure White
    - 3rd Coat: B55W00101 - Direct-To-Metal Enamel Pure White
- NOTE: Doors and Frames to be sprayed. No brush/roller marks will be accepted.

### 5. GALVANIZED METAL/ALUMINUM

- A. Painted (Semi-Gloss Finish/Alkyd Base)
  - 1st Coat: B66W00310 - Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl® Universal Primer Off White
  - 2nd Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial 0 VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White
  - 3rd Coat: B66W00651 - Pro Industrial 0 VOC Acrylic Semi-Gloss Extra White

### 6. CONCRETE FLOORS (SEALED)

- A. Painted (Clear Acrylic Floor Finish)
  - 1st Coat: 10.000004 - H&C Silicone Acrylic Concrete Sealer Clear
  - 2nd Coat: 10.000004 - H&C Silicone Acrylic Concrete Sealer Clear

END OF SECTION 09900

## SECTION 10522

### FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, CABINETS, AND ACCESSORIES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fire extinguishers. (2 total)
- B. Cabinets. (2 total)
- C. Accessories.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate cabinet physical dimensions, rough-in measurements for recessed cabinets, wall bracket mounted measurements, and location.
- B. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features, color and finish, and anchorage details.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.

##### 1.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Maintenance Data: Include test, refill, or recharge schedules and recertification requirements.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install extinguishers when ambient temperature may cause freezing of extinguisher ingredients.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. LARSEN'S - Architectural Series SS 2409-R4, Solid Door, baked enamel interior finish.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Dry Chemical Type: Larsen's MP series MP10 (10 lb.), Cast steel tank, with pressure gage.
- B. Quantity: 2 Total.

##### 2.03 CABINETS

- A. Metal: Formed sheet steel, baked enamel box.
- B. Configuration:
  - 1) Semi-recessed type, exterior nominal dimensions of 27 1/2 inch high x 13 inch wide x 6 inch deep – 2 Total.
- C. Trim Type: Returned to wall surface, with 3 1/2 inch projection.
- D. Door and Trim: **Stainless Steel**, reinforced for flatness and rigidity; latch with solid door.
- E. Door Lettering: Horizontal die cut.
- F. Cabinet Mounting Hardware: Appropriate to cabinet.

##### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Form cabinet enclosure with right angle inside corners and seams. Form perimeter trim and door stiles.
- B. Pre-drill for anchors.
- C. Hinge doors for 180 degree opening with continuous piano hinge. Provide roller type catch.
- D. Weld, fill, and grind components smooth.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify exact location with Architect prior to framing walls.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install cabinets plumb and level in wall openings, 24 inches from finished floor to inside bottom of cabinet.
- D. Secure rigidly in place.
- E. Place extinguishers in cabinets.

END OF SECTION 10522

## SECTION 10800

### TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Toilet and washroom accessories including grab bars.
- B. Attachment hardware.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. BOBRICK WASHROOM EQUIPMENT INC, or BRADLEY CORPORATION.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Weld and grind joints of fabricated components, smooth.
- B. Form exposed surfaces from single sheet of stock, free of joints. Form surfaces flat without distortion. Maintain surfaces without scratches or dents.
- C. Fabricate grab bars of tubing, free of visible joints, return to wall with end attachment flanges. Form bar with 1 1/2 inches clear of wall surface. Knurl grip surfaces.
- D. Shop assemble components and package complete with anchors and fittings.
- E. Provide steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.

##### 2.03 FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: ASTM A123 to 1.25 oz. /sq. yd. Galvanize ferrous metal and fastening devices.
- B. Chrome/Nickel Plating: ASTM B456, satin finish.
- C. Stainless Steel: No. 4 satin luster finish.
- D. Back paint components where contact is made with building finishes to prevent electrolysis.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that site conditions are ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings and instructed by the manufacturer.
- B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation. Coordinate with ADA requirements.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site for timely installation. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.

##### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and Americans with Disabilities Act. Also reference ANSI A117.1.
- B. Install plumb and level, securely and rigidly anchored to substrate.

##### 3.04 SCHEDULE (**Install All Handicap Accessories per 2010 ADAAG Requirements**)

- A. Grab Bars (Three Sets Total): Install at handicap water closet, mount 36 inches A.F.F. Bradley #812-001-36 and #812-001-42.
- B. Frameless Mirror Units (3-total): Install bottom at 40 inches A.F.F. maximum above lavatory – Bradley #747-3244.
- C. Surface Mounted Toilet Tissue Dispensers (3-total): Install one adjacent to each water closet, mount center line of roll at 24 inches A.F.F. and 7 inches from front edge of toilet. Bradley #5A10-11.
- D. Surface Mounted Soap Dispenser (3-total): Coordinate exact location with architect. Bradley #6562-73.
- E. Recessed Mounted Combination Paper Towel Dispenser/ Waste Receptacle (3-total): Coordinate location per drawings. Bradley #235.

- F. Surface Mounted Sanitary Napkin Receptacle (2-total): Coordinate location with architect. Bradley #4722-15.
- G. Utility Shelf with Mop/Broom Holders and Rag Holders (1-total): Mount on back wall at Janitor/Mechanical #109. Coordinate height and exact location with architect prior to installation. Bradley #9934.

END OF SECTION 10800

SECTION 10850  
BUILDING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building specialties shall be furnished and installed as shown and herein specified. Installation shall be in accordance with the respective manufacturer's instructions. Certain manufacturer's products have been selected as a basic standard, and reference to these products has been made. Other manufacturers' products of equal capacities and design characteristics may be used, if approved by the Architect prior to the Bidding. The Contractor shall submit for approval shop drawings or standard cuts and illustrations or a combination thereof showing all items he proposes to use.

1.02 INTERIOR BUILDING SIGNAGE

- A. Contractor shall include in his bid an allowance of \$500 for the purchase, delivery, and installation of interior building signage for all restrooms. All signage shall comply with 2010 ADA Standards as well as 2018 IBC requirements. Submit signage to architect for approval prior to ordering. Owner to select from manufacturer's full range of colors.

1.03 HANDICAP PARKING SIGNAGE AND POLE

- A. Provide and install pole mounted handicap sign with bottom of sign at 60 inches above grade. (1) sign labeled "Van Accessible" parking. Submit to Architect for approval. Coordinate locations with Architect.

1.04 EXTERIOR DRIVE-THRU SOFFIT ACCESS PANEL

- A. Provide and install J.L. Industries, Model TM, prefinished 16 gage steel locking access panel. 22"x36". Mortise keyed lock. **Color: Match Drive-Thru metal soffit.** Two total required.

1.04 UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR AT BEVERAGE COUNTER AND CONFERENCE ROOM

- A. Provide an undercounter beverage cooler similar to Summit Appliance, AL57G. Two total.

1.05 FIRE DEPARTMENT KNOX BOX

- A. Provide and install a **recessed** knox box at the new southeast entry per drawings. Knox Box shall be 3200 series with hinged door. Coordinate with Architect and City of Dodge City Fire Department. **Color – Black.**

1.06 FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC PANELING – FULL HEIGHT AT ALL WALLS OF JANITOR/MECHANICAL #107.

- A. Product - Class A – Minimum .090 thickness panel. Include Manufacturer's vinyl molding at all corners, transitions, joints, and tops, bottoms, etc.
- B. Product shall be applied using manufacturer recommended adhesive and manufacturer recommended mechanical fasteners. Pre-drill rivet holes and silicone caulk prior to riveting.
- C. Product shall be as per: Marlite, Sanitary Wall Series, Full range of colors.

1.07 COMPOSITE VERTICAL WOOD BOARDS FOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT GATE AND TRASH ENCLOSURE

- A. Trex, Transcend, Lineage. Square edge pieces. Full range of colors.

1.08 DOOR VIEWER

- A. Ives U698 One-Way Wide Angle Door Viewer. **Color/finish: Black.**
- B. Two per designated exterior doors. Verify height with Architect.
- C. Quantity: Two total

1.09 INTERIOR CEILING/ATTIC ACCESS PANEL

- A. J.L Industries, 22"x30" TM – Multi-Purpose Access Panel with standard cam latch. Color/finish: White.
- B. Verify locations with Architect. Quantity: Four total.

1.10 FABRIC WRAPPED ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS

- A. Manufacturer: G&S Acoustics, Acousti-Panels.
- B. Located at **Lobby #114**. Size as indicated on drawings (26"wide x 21"tall, 36 total). Panels to be 2" minimum thickness with edges factory wrapped. 1" bevel edge typical at all panel edges. Verify mounting heights and configuration with Architect.
- C. Provide all hardware and brackets for Z-Clip installation.
- D. Product to be Class 1 or Class A per ASTM E84
- E. **Color to be Guilford of Maine, Asteroid 2053.**

END OF SECTION 10850



## SECTION 22 05 16

### EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flexible pipe connectors.
- B. Expansion joints and compensators.
- C. Pipe loops, offsets, and swing joints.

##### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Flexible Pipe Connectors: Indicate maximum temperature and pressure rating, face-to-face length, live length, hose wall thickness, hose convolutions per foot and per assembly, fundamental frequency of assembly, braid structure, and total number of wires in braid.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record installed locations of flexible pipe connectors, expansion joints, anchors, and guides.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS - COPPER PIPING

- A. Inner Hose: Bronze.
- B. Exterior Sleeve: Braided bronze.
- C. Pressure Rating: 125 psi and 450 degrees F.
- D. Joint: Flanged.
- E. Size: Use pipe sized units.
- F. Maximum offset: 3/4 inch on each side of installed center line.
- G. Application: Copper piping.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide support and equipment required to control expansion and contraction of piping. Provide loops, pipe offsets, and swing joints, or expansion joints where required.

END OF SECTION 22 05 16



## SECTION 22 05 29

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Support and attachment components for equipment, piping, and other plumbing work.

##### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- C. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2015.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2018.
- E. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2016.
- F. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.
- G. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and arrangement of supports and bases with the actual equipment and components to be installed.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide additional framing and materials required for installation.
  - 3. Coordinate compatibility of support and attachment components with mounting surfaces at the installed locations.
  - 4. Coordinate the arrangement of supports with ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install products on or provide attachment to concrete surfaces until concrete has fully cured in accordance with Section 03 30 00.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for metal channel (strut) framing systems, non-penetrating rooftop supports, post-installed concrete and masonry anchors, and thermal insulated pipe supports.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with applicable building code.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Provide all required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for the complete installation of plumbing work.
  - 2. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended, where applicable.

3. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for the load to be supported. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.
  4. Do not use wire, chain, perforated pipe strap, or wood for permanent supports unless specifically indicated or permitted.
  5. Steel Components: Use corrosion resistant materials suitable for the environment where installed.
    - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel, stainless steel, or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.
    - d. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Metal Channel (Strut) Framing Systems:
1. Provide factory-fabricated continuous-slot metal channel (strut) and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field-assembly of supports.
  2. Comply with MFMA-4.
- C. Hanger Rods: Threaded zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Thermal Insulated Pipe Supports:
1. General Construction and Requirements:
    - a. Insulated pipe supports to be provided at hanger, support, and guide locations on pipe requiring insulation or additional support.
    - b. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/smoke developed index of 5/30, maximum, when tested in accordance with 1 or 1.
    - c. Pipe supports to be provided for nominally sized, 1/2 inch to 30 inch iron pipes.
    - d. Insulation inserts to consist of polyisocyanurate (urethane) insulation surrounded by a 360 degree, PVC jacketing.
  2. PVC Jacket:
    - a. Pipe insulation protection shields to be provided with a ball bearing hinge and locking seam.
    - b. Moisture Vapor Transmission: 0.0071 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - c. Thickness: 60 mil.
- E. Non-Penetrating Rooftop Supports for Low-Slope Roofs:
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Erico International Corporation, a brand of Pentair
  2. Provide steel pedestals with thermoplastic or rubber base that rest on top of roofing membrane, not requiring any attachment to the roof structure and not penetrating the roofing assembly, with support fixtures as specified.
  3. Base Sizes: As required to distribute load sufficiently to prevent indentation of roofing assembly.
  4. Attachment/Support Fixtures: As recommended by manufacturer, same type as indicated for equivalent indoor hangers and supports.
  5. Mounting Height: Provide minimum clearance of 6 inches under supported component to top of roofing.
- F. Anchors and Fasteners:
1. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the anchor and fastener types indicated for the specified applications.
  2. Concrete: Use preset concrete inserts, expansion anchors, or screw anchors.
  3. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
  4. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
  5. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.

6. Steel: Use beam clamps, machine bolts, or welded threaded studs.
7. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
8. Wood: Use wood screws.
9. Plastic and lead anchors are not permitted.
10. Preset Concrete Inserts: Continuous metal channel (strut) and spot inserts specifically designed to be cast in concrete ceilings, walls, and floors.
  - a. Comply with MFMA-4.
  - b. Channel Material: Use galvanized steel.
  - c. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of metal channel (strut) framing system.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, conduit, or other systems.
- C. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- D. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- E. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- F. Provide thermal insulated pipe supports complete with hangers and accessories. Install thermal insulated pipe supports during the installation of the piping system.
- G. Equipment Support and Attachment:
  1. Use metal fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel (strut) to support equipment as required.
  2. Use metal channel (strut) secured to studs to support equipment surface-mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.
  3. Use metal channel (strut) to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide space between equipment and mounting surface.
  4. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
- H. Preset Concrete Inserts: Use manufacturer provided closure strips to inhibit concrete seepage during concrete pour.
- I. Secure fasteners according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- J. Remove temporary supports.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29



## SECTION 22 05 53

### IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates.
- B. Tags.
- C. Pipe Markers.
- D. Ceiling tacks.

##### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2007.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. List: Submit list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for mechanical identification.
- C. Chart and Schedule: Submit valve chart and schedule, including valve tag number, location, function, and valve manufacturer's name and model number.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalog literature for each product required.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of tagged valves.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 NAMEPLATES

- A. Description: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved letters.
  - 1. Letter Color: White.
  - 2. Letter Height: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.

##### 2.2 TAGS

- A. Plastic Tags: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved black letters on light contrasting background color. Tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter.
- B. Metal Tags: Brass with stamped letters; tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter with smooth edges.
- C. Chart: Typewritten letter size list in anodized aluminum frame.

##### 2.3 PIPE MARKERS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Plastic Tape Pipe Markers: Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.

##### 2.4 CEILING TACKS

- A. Description: Steel with 3/4 inch diameter color coded head.
- B. Color code as follows:
  - 1. Plumbing Valves: Green.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive. Apply with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer.
- B. Install tags with corrosion resistant chain.

- C. Install plastic pipe markers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install plastic tape pipe markers complete around pipe in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Install underground plastic pipe markers 6 to 8 inches below finished grade, directly above buried pipe.
- F. Use tags on piping 3/4 inch diameter and smaller.
  - 1. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure.
  - 2. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping.
  - 3. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and Tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.
- G. Identify equipment with plastic nameplates. Small devices, such as in-line pumps, may be identified with tags.
- H. Identify control panels and major control components outside panels with plastic nameplates.
- I. Identify valves in main and branch piping with tags.
- J. Identify piping, concealed or exposed, with plastic pipe markers. Use tags on piping 3/4 inch diameter and smaller. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and Tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.
- K. Locate ceiling tacks to locate valves above lay-in panel ceilings. Locate in corner of panel closest to equipment.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53



SECTION 22 07 19  
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Jackets and accessories.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2013.
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- C. ASTM C449 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- D. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2016.
- E. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2017.
- F. ASTM C795 - Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2018.
- H. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2016.
- I. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with not less than three years of experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum 3 years of experience.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient conditions required by manufacturers of each product.
- B. Maintain temperature before, during, and after installation for minimum of 24 hours.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER

- A. Manufacturers:

1. Knauf Insulation: [www.knaufusa.com](http://www.knaufusa.com).
  2. Johns Manville Corporation: [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
  3. Owens Corning Corp: [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com).
  4. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
- B. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
1. 'K' value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
  2. Maximum service temperature: 250 degrees F.
  3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- C. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; semi-rigid, noncombustible, end grain adhered to jacket.
1. 'K' value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
  2. Maximum service temperature: 250 degrees F.
  3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- D. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M of 0.02 perm-inches.
- E. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive:
1. Compatible with insulation.
- F. Insulating Cement/Mastic:
1. ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.
- G. Fibrous Glass Fabric:
1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
  2. Blanket: 1.0 lb/cu ft density.
  3. Weave: 5x5.
- H. Indoor Vapor Barrier Finish:
1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
  2. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- I. Insulating Cement:
1. ASTM C449/C449M.
- 2.3 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION
- A. Manufacturer:
1. Armacell LLC: [www.armacell.us/#sle](http://www.armacell.us/#sle).
  2. K-Flex USA: [www.kflexusa.com](http://www.kflexusa.com).
- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534 Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
1. Minimum Service Temperature: -40 degrees F.
  2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F.
  3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.
- 2.4 JACKETS
- A. PVC Plastic.
1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
    - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F.
    - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
    - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - d. Thickness: 10 mil.
    - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- C. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, pump bodies, and expansion joints.
- D. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature:
  - 1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure sensitive adhesive.
  - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- E. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature:
  - 1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure sensitive adhesive.
  - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- F. Inserts and Shields:
  - 1. Application: Piping 2-1/2 inches diameter or larger.
  - 2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
  - 3. Insert location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
- G. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, refer to Firestopping Section.
- H. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces (less than 10 feet above finished floor): Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.

### 3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
  - 1. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: 1/2 through 1-1/4 inch.
    - b. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: Above 1-1/4 inch
    - b. Thickness: 1 inch
- B. Domestic Hot, and Recirculated Hot Water:
  - 1. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: 1/2 through 1-1/4 inch.
    - b. Thickness: 1 inch.
- C. Roof Drain Bodies: 1" thick glass fiber
- D. Roof Drainage Above Grade: 1" thick glass fiber. Omit in vertical runs concealed in walls if available space does not allow installation of insulation.
- E. Other Systems:
  - 1. Drains from water coolers: 1/2" elastomeric

END OF SECTION 22 07 19



SECTION 22 10 05  
PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pipe, pipe fittings, valves, and connections for piping systems.
  - 1. Sanitary sewer.
  - 2. Domestic water.
  - 3. Gas.
  - 4. Flanges, unions, and couplings.
  - 5. Pipe hangers and supports.
  - 6. Valves.
  - 7. Flow controls.
  - 8. Check.
  - 9. Water pressure reducing valves.
  - 10. Relief valves.
  - 11. Sleeves
  - 12. Sleeve seals
  - 13. Grout
  - 14. Escutcheons

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section - Firestopping.
- B. Section 220553 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- C. Section 22 07 19 - Plumbing Piping Insulation.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z21.22 - American National Standard for Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems; 2015.
- B. ANSI Z223.1 - National Fuel Gas Code; 2016.
- C. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2016.
- D. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2012.
- E. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2013.
- F. ASME B31.1 - Power Piping; 2016.
- G. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2014.
- H. ASSE 1003 - Performance Requirements for Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Distribution Systems; 2009.
- I. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2018.
- J. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2017.
- K. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2017.
- L. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2008 (Reapproved 2014).
- M. ASTM B42 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes; 2015a.
- N. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2016.
- O. ASTM B813 - Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube; 2016.

- P. ASTM B828 - Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings; 2016.
- Q. ASTM C564 - Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- R. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2012.
- S. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- T. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2011.
- U. ASTM D2855 - Standard Practice for the Two-Step (Primer & Solvent Cement) Method of Joining Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Pipe and Piping Components with Tapered Sockets; 2015.
- V. ASTM F876 - Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing; 2017.
- W. ASTM F877 - Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems; 2011a.
- X. ASTM F708 - Standard Practice for Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers; 1992 (Reapproved 2008).
- Y. ASTM F 2389-06 - Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems
- Z. CSA B137.11 - Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
- AA. NSF/ANSI 14 - Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials
- AB. NSF/ANSI 61 - Drinking Water Systems Components - Health Effects
- AC. AWWA C550 - Protective Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants; 2017.
- AD. AWWA C651 - Disinfecting Water Mains; 2014.
- AE. CISPI 301 - Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications; 2009 (Revised 2012).
- AF. CISPI 310 - Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications; 2011 (Revised 2012).
- AG. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2015.
- AH. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2009.
- AI. MSS SP-67 - Butterfly Valves; 2017.
- AJ. MSS SP-70 - Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- AK. MSS SP-71 - Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011, with Errata (2013).
- AL. MSS SP-78 - Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- AM. MSS SP-80 - Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves; 2013.
- AN. MSS SP-110 - Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends; 2010.
- AO. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2016.
- AP. PPI TR-4 - PPI Listing of Hydrostatic Design Basis (HDB), Hydrostatic Design Stress (HDS), Strength Design Basis (SDB), Pressure Design Basis (PDB), and Minimum Required Strength (MRS) Ratings For Thermoplastic Piping Materials or Pipe; 2017.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves, and accessories. Provide manufacturers catalog information. Indicate valve data and ratings.

- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing of piping. Record actual locations of valves.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with State of Kansas standards.
- B. Where joining systems specific to a piping manufacturer are used, personnel shall receive factory authorized training prior to installation, and submit evidence of such training for review.
- C. Valves: Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body.
- D. Welding Materials and Procedures: Conform to ASME BPVC-IX and applicable state labor regulations.
- E. Welder Qualifications: Certified in accordance with ASME BPVC-IX.
- F. Identify pipe with marking including size, ASTM material classification, ASTM specification, potable water certification, water pressure rating.

#### 1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform Work in accordance with State of Kansas, plumbing code.
- B. Conform to applicable code for installation of backflow prevention devices.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place. Inspect for damage.
- B. Provide temporary protective coating on cast iron and steel valves.
- C. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- D. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install underground piping when bedding is wet or frozen.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Potable Water Supply Systems: Provide piping, pipe fittings, and solder and flux (if used), that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content; label pipe and fittings.
- B. Reference PART 3 EXECUTION for product applications. Listing of products herein does not imply acceptance of use in all sizes or locations.

#### 2.2 SANITARY SEWER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: ASTM A74 extra heavy weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: Hub-and-spigot, CISPI HSN compression type with ASTM C564 neoprene gaskets or lead and oakum.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

#### 2.3 SANITARY SEWER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless, service weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2729.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

## 2.4 WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Copper Pipe: ASTM B42, hard drawn.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM B 32, alloy Sn95 solder.
- B. PE Pipe: ASTM D2239, or ASTM D2447 Schedule 40.
  - 1. Fittings: ASTM D2609, PE.
  - 2. Joints: Mechanical with stainless steel clamp.

## 2.5 WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), Drawn (H).
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought copper and bronze.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM B32, alloy Sn95 solder.
- B. Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe: ASTM F876 or ASTM F877.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Uponor, Inc: [www.uponorengineering.com/#sle](http://www.uponorengineering.com/#sle).
    - b. Viega LLC: [www.viega.com/#sle](http://www.viega.com/#sle).
  - 2. PPI TR-4 Pressure Design Basis:
    - a. 100 psig at maximum 180 degrees F.
  - 3. Fittings: Brass and copper.
- C. Polypropylene Pipe: Pipe shall be manufactured from a PP-R or PP-RCT resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The pipe shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material. All pipe shall be made in a multi-layer extrusion process. Domestic hot water shall contain a fiber layer (faser) to restrict thermal expansion. All pipe shall comply with the rated pressure requirements of ASTM F 2389. All pipe shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
  - 1. Pipe shall be Niron Clima Pipe as manufactured by Nupi Americas or equivalent approved by Engineer.
  - 2. Fittings shall be manufactured from a PP-R or PP-RCT resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The fittings shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material. All fittings shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
  - 3. Valves shall be manufactured from resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The valves shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material.
  - 4. Manufacturer shall warrant pipe and fittings for 30 years to be free of defects in materials or workmanship. Warrantee shall cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system do to defects in materials or workmanship.
- D. Mechanical joint system: Manufacturer's fittings and joining methods, for pipe materials and sizes.
  - 1. Viega ProPress

## 2.6 STORM WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

## 2.7 NATURAL GAS PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.



1. Fittings: ASME B16.3, malleable iron, or ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type.
  2. Joints: Threaded or welded to ASME B31.1.
- B. Mechanical joint system: Manufacturer's fittings and joining methods, for pipe materials and sizes.
1. Viega Mega-Press
- 2.8 FLANGES, UNIONS, AND COUPLINGS
- A. Unions for Pipe Sizes 3 Inches and Under:
1. Ferrous pipe: Class 150 malleable iron threaded unions.
  2. Copper tube and pipe: Class 150 bronze unions with soldered joints.
- B. Dielectric Connections: Union with galvanized or plated steel threaded end, copper solder end, water impervious isolation barrier.
- 2.9 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
- A. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.
1. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
  2. Overhead Supports: Individual steel rod hangers attached to structure or to trapeze hangers.
  3. Trapeze Hangers: Welded steel channel frames attached to structure.
  4. Vertical Pipe Support: Steel riser clamp.
- B. Plumbing Piping - Drain, Waste, and Vent:
1. Conform to ASME B31.9.
  2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch to 1-1/2 Inches: Carbon steel, adjustable swivel, split ring.
  3. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  4. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
  5. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
  6. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
  7. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- C. Plumbing Piping - Water:
1. Conform to ASME B31.9.
  2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch to 1-1/2 Inches: Malleable iron, adjustable swivel, split ring.
  3. Hangers for Cold Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  4. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 2 Inches to 4 Inches: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  5. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded supports or spacers and hanger rods.
  6. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Over: Steel channels with welded supports or spacers and hanger rods, cast iron roll.
  7. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
  8. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
  9. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- D. Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners, as follows:
1. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
  2. Other Types: As required.
- 2.10 GATE VALVES
- A. Manufacturers:
1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  2. Conbraco Industries: [www.conbraco.com](http://www.conbraco.com).
  3. Nibco, Inc: [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
  4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
- B. Up To and Including 3 Inches:
1. 1, Class 125, bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, handwheel, inside screw, solid wedge disc, solder ends.

- C. 2 Inches and Larger:
  - 1. 1, Class 125, iron body, bronze trim, outside screw and yoke, handwheel, solid wedge disc, flanged ends. Provide chain-wheel operators for valves 6 inches and larger mounted over 8 feet above floor.

## 2.11 BALL VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. Conbraco Industries: [www.conbraco.com](http://www.conbraco.com).
  - 3. Nibco, Inc: [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
  - 4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
- B. Construction, 4 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-110, Class 150, 400 psi CWP, bronze, two piece body, chrome plated brass ball, regular port, teflon seats and stuffing box ring, blow-out proof stem, lever handle with balancing stops, solder ends with union.

## 2.12 PLUG VALVES

- A. Construction 2-1/2 Inches and Larger: 1, 175 psi CWP, cast iron body and plug, pressure lubricated, teflon or Buna N packing, flanged or grooved ends. Provide lever operator with set screw.

## 2.13 BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. Hammond Valve: [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
  - 3. Crane Co.: [www.cranevalve.com](http://www.cranevalve.com).
  - 4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
- B. Construction 1-1/2 Inches and Larger: MSS SP-67, 200 psi CWP, cast or ductile iron body, nickel-plated ductile iron disc, resilient replaceable EPDM seat, wafer ends, extended neck, 10 position lever handle.
- C. Provide gear operators for valves 8 inches and larger, and chain-wheel operators for valves mounted over 8 feet above floor.

## 2.14 FLOW CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. ITT Bell & Gossett: [www.bellgossett.com](http://www.bellgossett.com).
  - 3. Griswold Controls: [www.griswoldcontrols.com](http://www.griswoldcontrols.com).
  - 4. Taco, Inc: [www.taco-hvac.com](http://www.taco-hvac.com).
- B. Construction: Class 125, Brass or bronze body with union on inlet and outlet, temperature and pressure test plug on inlet and outlet, blowdown/backflush drain.
- C. Calibration: Control flow within 5 percent of selected rating, over operating pressure range of 10 times minimum pressure required for control, maximum minimum pressure 3.5 psi.

## 2.15 SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. Hammond Valve: [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
  - 3. Nibco, Inc: [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
  - 4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
- B. Up to 2 Inches:
  - 1. 1, Class 125, bronze body and cap, bronze swing disc with rubber seat, solder ends.
- C. Over 2 Inches:

1. 1, Class 125, iron body, bronze swing disc, renewable disc seal and seat, flanged or grooved ends.
- 2.16 SPRING LOADED CHECK VALVES
- A. Manufacturers:
    1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
    2. Hammond Valve: [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
    3. Crane Co.: [www.cranevalve.com](http://www.cranevalve.com).
    4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
  - B. Class 125, iron body, bronze trim, stainless steel springs, bronze disc, Buna N seals, wafer style ends.
- 2.17 WATER PRESSURE REDUCING VALVES
- A. Manufacturers:
    1. Amtrol Inc: [www.amtrol.com](http://www.amtrol.com).
    2. Cla-Val Co: [www.cla-val.com](http://www.cla-val.com).
    3. Watts Regulator Company: [www.wattsregulator.com](http://www.wattsregulator.com).
  - B. Up to 2 Inches:
    1. ASSE 1003, bronze body, stainless steel, and thermoplastic internal parts, fabric reinforced diaphragm, strainer, threaded single union ends.
  - C. Over 2 Inches:
    1. ASSE 1003, cast iron body with interior lining complying with AWWA C550, bronze fitted, elastomeric diaphragm and seat disc, flanged.
- 2.18 RELIEF VALVES
- 2.19 RELIEF VALVES
- A. Temperature and Pressure Relief:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Cla-Val Co: [www.cla-val.com](http://www.cla-val.com).
      - b. Henry Technologies: [www.henrytech.com](http://www.henrytech.com).
      - c. Watts Regulator Company: [www.wattsregulator.com](http://www.wattsregulator.com).
    2. AGA Z21.22 certified, bronze body, teflon seat, stainless steel stem and springs, automatic, direct pressure actuated, temperature relief maximum 210 degrees F, capacity ASME (BPV IV) certified and labelled.
- 2.20 SLEEVES
- A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- 2.21 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
    1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
    2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
    3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.
- 2.22 GROUT
- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
  - B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.23 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that excavations are to required grade, dry, and not over-excavated.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale and dirt, on inside and outside, before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide non-conducting dielectric connections wherever jointing dissimilar metals.
- C. Route piping in orderly manner and maintain gradient. Route parallel and perpendicular to walls.
- D. Install piping to maintain headroom, conserve space, and not interfere with use of space.
- E. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- F. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- G. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- H. Provide access where valves and fittings are not exposed.
- I. Install vent piping penetrating roofed areas to maintain integrity of roof assembly.
- J. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welding.
- K. Provide support for utility meters in accordance with requirements of utility companies.

### L. TRENCHING

1. Notify Architect of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
2. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.
3. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
4. Cut trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities.
5. Hand trim excavations. Remove loose matter.
6. Remove large stones and other hard matter that could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.
7. Remove excavated material from site.

### M. BACKFILLING

1. Utilize Sand Fill. Place and compact materials in equal continuous layers not exceeding 6 inches compacted depth.
  2. Fill up to subgrade elevations unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
  4. Systematically fill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not fill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
  5. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- N. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.
- O. Pipe vents from gas pressure reducing valves to outdoors and terminate in weather proof hood.
- P. Install water piping to ASME B31.9.
- Q. Copper Pipe and Tube: Make soldered joints in accordance with ASTM B828, using specified solder, and flux meeting ASTM B813; in potable water systems use flux also complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- R. PVC Pipe: Make solvent-welded joints in accordance with ASTM D2855.
- S. Do not use PVC piping in return air plenums.
- T. PP Piping: Install fittings and joints using socket-fusion, electrofusion, or butt-fusion as applicable for the fitting type. All fusion-weld joints shall be made in accordance with the pipe and fitting manufacturer's specifications and product standards.
- U. The use of PEX piping shall be limited to 1" and smaller unless noted otherwise.
- V. SLEEVE INSTALLATION
1. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
  2. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
    - a. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
  3. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
    - a. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
    - b. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      - 1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
    - c. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
  4. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
    - a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - b. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
    - c. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in other sections.
  5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in other sections.
- W. SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION
1. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
  2. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.
- X. ESCUTCHEONS

1. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
2. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - a. Escutcheons Schedule:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - 2) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
    - 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

Y. Inserts:

1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.

Z. Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.9.
2. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.
3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
5. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
6. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
7. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
8. Provide hangers adjacent to motor driven equipment with vibration isolation; refer to Section 22 05 48.
9. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.

### 3.4 APPLICATION

- A. Install unions downstream of valves and at equipment or apparatus connections.
- B. Install brass male adapters each side of valves in copper piped system. Solder adapters to pipe.
- C. Install gate or ball valves for shut-off and to isolate equipment, part of systems, or vertical risers.
- D. Provide spring loaded check valves on discharge of water pumps.
- E. Provide flow controls in water recirculating systems where indicated.

### 3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. Drainage Piping: Establish invert elevations within 1/2 inch vertically of location indicated and slope to drain at minimum of 1/8 inch per foot slope.

### 3.6 DISINFECTION OF DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEM

- A. Prior to starting work, verify system is complete, flushed and clean.
- B. Ensure Ph of water to be treated is between 7.4 and 7.6 by adding alkali (caustic soda or soda ash) or acid (hydrochloric).

- C. Inject disinfectant, free chlorine in liquid, powder, tablet or gas form, throughout system to obtain 50 to 80 mg/L residual.
- D. Bleed water from outlets to ensure distribution and test for disinfectant residual at minimum 15 percent of outlets.
- E. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours.
- F. If final disinfectant residual tests less than 25 mg/L, repeat treatment.
- G. Flush disinfectant from system until residual equal to that of incoming water or 1.0 mg/L.
- H. Take samples no sooner than 24 hours after flushing, from 10 percent of outlets and from water entry, and analyze in accordance with AWWA C651.

### 3.7 SCHEDULES

- A. Pipe Hanger Spacing:
  - 1. Metal Piping:
    - a. Pipe size: 1/2 inches to 1-1/4 inches:
      - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 6.5 ft.
      - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inches.
    - b. Pipe size: 1-1/2 inches to 2 inches:
      - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 10 ft.
      - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inch.
    - c. Pipe size: 2-1/2 inches to 3 inches:
      - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 10 ft.
      - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 1/2 inch.
    - d. Pipe size: 4 inches to 6 inches:
      - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 10 ft.
      - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Plastic Piping:
    - a. All Sizes:
      - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 6 ft.
      - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inch.
- B. Pipe Materials:
  - 1. Domestic Water:
    - a. Basis of design is copper. If PEX is used, sizes shall be adjusted to provide equivalent hydraulic diameter.
    - b. Stubouts to fixtures shall be copper.
    - c. Pipe sizes 1/2" to 1": Any material listed for use in Part 2.
    - d. Pipe sizes 1-1/4" and larger: Any material listed for use in Part 2, except PEX is not acceptable.
  - 2. Sanitary Drain and Vent: Any material listed for use in Part 2.
    - a. PVC shall not be used in return air plenums.
  - 3. Natural Gas: Any materials listed for use in Part 2.

END OF SECTION 22 10 05





SECTION 22 10 06  
PLUMBING PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Floor drains.
- B. Cleanouts.
- C. Hydrants.
- D. Water hammer arrestors.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASSE 1011 - Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers; 2004.
- B. ASSE 1019 - Performance Requirements for Wall Hydrant with Backflow Protection and Freeze Resistance; 2011.
- C. PDI-WH 201 - Water Hammer Arresters; 2010.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide component sizes, rough-in requirements, service sizes, and finishes.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DRAINS

- A. Floor Drains: See plumbing fixture schedule

2.2 CLEANOUTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company: [www.jayrsmith.com/#sle](http://www.jayrsmith.com/#sle).
  - 2. Josam Company: [www.josam.com/#sle](http://www.josam.com/#sle).
  - 3. Zurn Industries, Inc: [www.zurn.com/#sle](http://www.zurn.com/#sle).
  - 4. Sioux Chief Manufacturing.
- B. Cleanouts at Exterior Surfaced Areas:
  - 1. Round cast nickel bronze access frame and non-skid cover.
- C. Cleanouts at Exterior Unsurfaced Areas:
  - 1. Line type with lacquered cast iron body and round epoxy coated gasketed cover.
- D. Cleanouts at Interior Finished Floor Areas (FFCO):
  - 1. Lacquered cast iron body with anchor flange, threaded top assembly, and round gasketed scored cover in service areas and round gasketed depressed cover to accept floor finish in finished floor areas.
- E. Cleanouts at Interior Finished Wall Areas (FWCO):
  - 1. Line type with lacquered cast iron body and round epoxy coated gasketed cover, and round stainless steel access cover secured with machine screw.
- F. Cleanouts at Interior Unfinished Accessible Areas: Caulked or threaded type.

2.3 HOSE BIBBS

- A. Interior Hose Bibbs:
  - 1. Bronze or brass with integral mounting flange, replaceable hexagonal disc, hose thread spout, with handwheel, integral vacuum breaker in conformance with ASSE 1011.

2.4 HYDRANTS

- A. Wall Hydrants:

1. ASSE 1019; freeze resistant, self-draining type with chrome plated wall plate hose thread spout, lockshield and removable key, and integral vacuum breaker.

## 2.5 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Sioux Chief Manufacturing
- B. Water Hammer Arrestors:
  1. Stainless steel or Copper construction, piston type sized in accordance with PDI-WH 201, precharged suitable for operation in temperature range 34 to 250 degrees F and maximum 150 psi working pressure.

## 2.6 FLOOR DRAIN TRAP SEALS

- A. Description: Push-fit EPDM or silicone fitting with a one-way membrane.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Extend cleanouts to finished floor or wall surface. Lubricate threaded cleanout plugs with mixture of graphite and linseed oil. Ensure clearance at cleanout for rodding of drainage system.
- C. Encase exterior cleanouts in concrete flush with grade.
- D. Install floor cleanouts at elevation to accommodate finished floor.
- E. Install approved portable water protection devices on plumbing lines where contamination of domestic water may occur.
- F. Pipe relief from backflow preventer to nearest drain.
- G. Install water hammer arrestors on cold water supply piping to flush valve or solenoid operated fixtures.  
. Install as recommended by hammer arrestor manufacturer.
- H. Install cleanouts at locations required by the International Plumbing Code (IPC), whether or not specifically indicated on the drawings. Such locations include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Base of waste or soil stacks.
  2. Junction of building drain and building sewer (utilize 2-way cleanout at this location).
- I. Install air chambers on hot and cold water supply piping to each fixture or group of fixtures (each washroom). Fabricate utilizing copper pip, same size as supply pipe or 3/4 inch minimum, and minimum 18 inches long.

END OF SECTION 22 10 06

SECTION 22 30 00  
PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Water heaters.
- B. Pumps.
  - 1. Circulators.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME BPVC-VIII-1 - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1 - Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2013.
- B. ICC (IPC) - International Plumbing Code; 2012.
- C. UL 174 - Standard for Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 778 - Standard for Motor-Operated Water Pumps; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 1453 - Standard for Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Provide dimension drawings of water heaters indicating components and connections to other equipment and piping.
  - 2. Indicate pump type, capacity, power requirements.
  - 3. Provide certified pump curves showing pump performance characteristics with pump and system operating point plotted. Include NPSH curve when applicable.
  - 4. Provide electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate dimensions of tanks, tank lining methods, anchors, attachments, lifting points, tappings, and drains.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include operation, maintenance, and inspection data, replacement part numbers and availability, and service depot location and telephone number.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Identification: Provide pumps with manufacturer's name, model number, and rating/capacity identified by permanently attached label.
- C. Performance: Ensure pumps operate at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.

1.5 CERTIFICATIONS

- A. Water Heaters: NSF approved.
- B. Electric Water Heaters: UL listed and labeled to UL 174 or UL 1453.
- C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc., as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Provide temporary inlet and outlet caps. Maintain caps in place until installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for domestic water heaters.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WATER HEATER MANUFACTURERS

- A. A.O. Smith Water Products Co: [www.hotwater.com](http://www.hotwater.com).
- B. Rheem Manufacturing Company: [www.rheem.com](http://www.rheem.com).

### 2.2 ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS

- A. Type: Automatic, electric, vertical storage.
- B. Electrical Characteristics: On drawings.
- C. Tank: Glass lined welded steel, thermally insulated with one inch thick glass fiber; encased in corrosion-resistant steel jacket; baked-on enamel finish.
- D. Controls: Automatic water thermostat with externally adjustable temperature range from 120 to 170 degrees F, flanged or screw-in nichrome elements, enclosed controls and electrical junction box .
- E. Accessories: Provide:
  - 1. Water Connections: Brass.
  - 2. Dip tube: Brass.
  - 3. Drain Valve.
  - 4. Anode: Magnesium

### 2.3 DIAPHRAGM-TYPE COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Amtrol Inc: [www.amtrol.com/#sle](http://www.amtrol.com/#sle).
  - 2. ITT Bell & Gossett: [www.bellgossett.com](http://www.bellgossett.com).
  - 3. Taco, Inc: [www.taco-hvac.com](http://www.taco-hvac.com).
- B. Construction: Welded steel, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC-VIII-1; supplied with National Board Form U-1, rated for working pressure of 125 psig, with flexible EPDM diaphragm sealed into tank, and steel legs or saddles.
- C. Accessories: Pressure gage and air-charging fitting, tank drain; precharge to 12 psig.

### 2.4 IN-LINE CIRCULATOR PUMPS

- A. Casing: Bronze, rated for 125 psig working pressure, with stainless steel rotor assembly.
- B. Impeller: Bronze.
- C. Shaft: Alloy steel with integral thrust collar and two oil lubricated bronze sleeve bearings.
- D. Seal: Carbon rotating against a stationary ceramic seat.
- E. Drive: Flexible coupling.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plumbing equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, as required by code, and complying with conditions of certification, if any.
- B. Coordinate with plumbing piping and related electrical work to achieve operating system.
- C. Pumps:
  - 1. Provide line sized isolating valve and strainer on suction and line sized soft seated check valve and balancing valve on discharge.

2. Decrease from line size with long radius reducing elbows or reducers. Support piping adjacent to pump such that no weight is carried on pump casings. Provide supports under elbows on pump suction and discharge line sizes 4 inches and over.
3. Ensure pumps operate at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, and operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.

END OF SECTION 22 30 00



SECTION 22 40 00  
PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fixtures

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 18 - Methods of Testing for Rating Drinking-Water Coolers with Self-Contained Mechanical Refrigeration; 2008.
- B. ASME A112.6.1M - Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use; 1997 (Reaffirmed 2002).
- C. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings; 2012.
- D. ASME A112.19.2 - Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures; 2013.
- E. ASME A112.19.3 - Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use); 2008 (R2013).
- F. ASME A112.19.5 - Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks; 2011.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog illustrations of fixtures, sizes, rough-in dimensions, utility sizes, trim, and finishes.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation methods and procedures.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include fixture trim exploded view and replacement parts lists.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Faucet Washers: Two sets of each type and size.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept fixtures on site in factory packaging. Inspect for damage.
- B. Protect installed fixtures from damage by securing areas and by leaving factory packaging in place to protect fixtures and prevent use.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for electric water cooler.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FIXTURES

- A. Scheduled on drawings
- B. Substitutions permitted, provided products are functionally and materially equivalent to those scheduled. Substitutions must be approved by Engineer in writing, prior to bidding. Requests for substitution must be received at least 5 work days prior to bidding.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that walls and floor finishes are prepared and ready for installation of fixtures.
- B. Verify that electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.
- C. Confirm that millwork is constructed with adequate provision for the installation of counter top lavatories and sinks.

D. Reference Architectural drawings for exact locations of fixtures.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Rough-in fixture piping connections in accordance with minimum sizes indicated in fixture rough-in schedule for particular fixtures.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install each fixture with trap, easily removable for servicing and cleaning.

B. Provide chrome plated rigid or flexible supplies to fixtures with loose key stops, reducers, and escutcheons.

C. Install components level and plumb.

D. Install and secure fixtures in place with wall supports and bolts.

E. Seal fixtures to wall and floor surfaces with sealant, color to match fixture.

### 3.4 INTERFACE WITH WORK OF OTHER SECTIONS

A. Review millwork shop drawings. Confirm location and size of fixtures and openings before rough-in and installation.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust stops or valves for intended water flow rate to fixtures without splashing, noise, or overflow.

### 3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean plumbing fixtures and equipment.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

B. Do not permit use of fixtures by construction personnel.

C. Repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

### 3.8 SCHEDULES

A. On Drawings

END OF SECTION 22 40 00



## SECTION 23 05 93

### TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Testing, adjustment, and balancing of air systems.
- B. Measurement of final operating condition of HVAC systems.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AABC MN-1 - AABC National Standards for Total System Balance; Associated Air Balance Council; 2002.
- B. NEBB (TAB) - Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems; 2015, with Errata (2017).

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Qualifications: Submit name of adjusting and balancing agency and TAB supervisor for approval within 30 days after award of Contract.
- C. Final Report: Indicate deficiencies in systems that would prevent proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment to achieve specified performance.
  - 1. Submit to the Construction Manager within two weeks after completion of testing, adjusting, and balancing.
  - 2. Revise TAB plan to reflect actual procedures and submit as part of final report.
  - 3. Provide reports in soft cover, letter size, 3-ring binder manuals, complete with index page and indexing tabs, with cover identification at front and side. Include set of reduced drawings with air outlets and equipment identified to correspond with data sheets, and indicating thermostat locations.
  - 4. Include actual instrument list, with manufacturer name, serial number, and date of calibration.
  - 5. Form of Test Reports: Where the TAB standard being followed recommends a report format use that; otherwise, follow ASHRAE Std 111.
  - 6. Units of Measure: Report data in I-P (inch-pound) units only.
  - 7. Include the following on the title page of each report:
    - a. Name of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - b. Address of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - c. Telephone number of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - d. Project name.
    - e. Project location.
    - f. Report date.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of flow measuring stations and balancing valves and rough setting.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform total system balance in accordance with one of the following:
  - 1. AABC MN-1, AABC National Standards for Total System Balance.
  - 2. ASHRAE Std 111, Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration Systems.
  - 3. NEBB Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental Systems.

- B. Begin work after completion of systems to be tested, adjusted, or balanced and complete work prior to Substantial Completion of the project.
- C. Where HVAC systems and/or components interface with life safety systems, including fire and smoke detection, alarm, and control, coordinate scheduling and testing and inspection procedures with the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. TAB Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Company specializing in the testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems specified in this section.
  - 2. Having minimum of three years documented experience.
  - 3. Certified by one of the following:
    - a. AABC, Associated Air Balance Council: [www.aabchq.com](http://www.aabchq.com); upon completion submit AABC National Performance Guaranty.
    - b. NEBB, National Environmental Balancing Bureau: [www.nebb.org/#sle](http://www.nebb.org/#sle).
- E. TAB Supervisor Qualifications: Professional Engineer licensed in Kansas .

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that systems are complete and operable before commencing work. Ensure the following conditions:
  - 1. Systems are started and operating in a safe and normal condition.
  - 2. Temperature control systems are installed complete and operable.
  - 3. Proper thermal overload protection is in place for electrical equipment.
  - 4. Final filters are clean and in place. If required, install temporary media in addition to final filters.
  - 5. Duct systems are clean of debris.
  - 6. Fans are rotating correctly.
  - 7. Fire and volume dampers are in place and open.
  - 8. Air coil fins are cleaned and combed.
  - 9. Access doors are closed and duct end caps are in place.
  - 10. Air outlets are installed and connected.
  - 11. Duct system leakage is minimized.
  - 12. Hydronic systems are flushed, filled, and vented.
- B. Submit field reports. Report defects and deficiencies that will or could prevent proper system balance.
- C. Beginning of work means acceptance of existing conditions.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Hold a pre-balancing meeting at least one week prior to starting TAB work.
  - 1. Require attendance by all installers whose work will be tested, adjusted, or balanced.
- B. Provide instruments required for testing, adjusting, and balancing operations. Make instruments available to Architect to facilitate spot checks during testing.
- C. Provide additional balancing devices as required.

### 3.4 ADJUSTMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Air Handling Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design for supply systems and plus or minus 10 percent of design for return and exhaust systems.
- B. Air Outlets and Inlets: Adjust total to within plus 10 percent and minus 10 percent of design to space. Adjust outlets and inlets in space to within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- C. Hydronic Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

### 3.5 RECORDING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Field Logs: Maintain written logs including:
  - 1. Running log of events and issues.
  - 2. Discrepancies, deficient or uncompleted work by others.

3. Contract interpretation requests.
  4. Lists of completed tests.
- B. Ensure recorded data represents actual measured or observed conditions.
  - C. Permanently mark settings of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices allowing settings to be restored. Set and lock memory stops.
  - D. After adjustment, take measurements to verify balance has not been disrupted or that such disruption has been rectified.
  - E. Leave systems in proper working order, replacing belt guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes, and restoring thermostats to specified settings.
- 3.6 AIR SYSTEM PROCEDURE
- A. Adjust air handling and distribution systems to provide required or design supply, return, and exhaust air quantities .
  - B. Make air quantity measurements in ducts by Pitot tube traverse of entire cross sectional area of duct.
  - C. Measure air quantities at air inlets and outlets.
  - D. Adjust distribution system to obtain uniform space temperatures free from objectionable drafts and noise.
  - E. Use volume control devices to regulate air quantities only to extent that adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels. Effect volume control by duct internal devices such as dampers and splitters.
  - F. Vary total system air quantities by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes required. Vary branch air quantities by damper regulation.
  - G. Provide system schematic with required and actual air quantities recorded at each outlet or inlet.
  - H. Measure static air pressure conditions on air supply units, including filter and coil pressure drops, and total pressure across the fan. Make allowances for 50 percent loading of filters.
  - I. Adjust outside air automatic dampers, outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers for design conditions.
  - J. Measure temperature conditions across outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers to check leakage.
  - K. Where modulating dampers are provided, take measurements and balance at extreme conditions.
  - L. Measure building static pressure and adjust supply, return, and exhaust air systems to provide required relationship between each to maintain approximately 0.05 inches positive static pressure near the building entries.
- 3.7 SCOPE
- A. Test, adjust, and balance the following:
    1. Forced Air Furnaces.
    2. Computer Room Air Conditioning Units.
    3. Fans
    4. Air Inlets and Outlets
- 3.8 MINIMUM DATA TO BE REPORTED
- A. Electric Motors:
    1. Manufacturer
    2. Model/Frame
    3. HP/BHP
    4. Phase, voltage, amperage; nameplate, actual, no load
    5. RPM
    6. Service factor
    7. Starter size, rating, heater elements

8. Sheave Make/Size/Bore
- B. Air Distribution Tests:
  1. Room number/location
  2. Terminal type
  3. Design air flow
  4. Test (final) air flow
  5. Percent of design air flow

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

SECTION 23 07 13  
DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Duct insulation.
- B. Duct Liner.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2017.
- B. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2016.
- C. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2013.
- D. ASTM C916 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation; 2014.
- E. ASTM C1071 - Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material); 2016.
- F. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2018.
- G. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2016.
- H. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015.
- I. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- J. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. ASTM C 1338 - Fungi Resistance
- L. ASTM G 22 - Bacterial Resistance

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures necessary to ensure acceptable workmanship and that installation standards will be achieved.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum three years of experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labelled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.
- B. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original wrapping.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.
- B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.

### 2.2 GLASS FIBER, FLEXIBLE

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Knauf Insulation: [www.knaufusa.com](http://www.knaufusa.com).
  - 2. Johns Manville Corporation: [www.jm.com/#sle](http://www.jm.com/#sle).
  - 3. Owens Corning Corp: [www.owenscorning.com/#sle](http://www.owenscorning.com/#sle).
  - 4. CertainTeed Corporation; : [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
- B. Insulation: ASTM C553; flexible, noncombustible blanket.
  - 1. 'K' value: 0.25 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
  - 2. Maximum Water Vapor Sorption: 5.0 percent by weight.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket:
  - 1. Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
  - 2. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
  - 3. Secure with pressure sensitive tape.
- D. Vapor Barrier Tape:
  - 1. Kraft paper reinforced with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film, with pressure sensitive rubber based adhesive.

### 2.3 DUCT LINER

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Armacell LLC; AP Coilflex: [www.armacell.us/#sle](http://www.armacell.us/#sle).
- B. Elastomeric Foam Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1, in sheet form.
  - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 180 degrees F.
  - 3. Fungal Resistance: No growth when tested according to ASTM G21.
  - 4. Apparent Thermal Conductivity: Maximum of 0.28 at 75 degrees F.
  - 5. Minimum Noise Reduction Coefficients:
    - a. 1/2 inch Thickness: 0.30.
  - 6. Erosion Resistance: Does not show evidence of breaking away, flaking off, or delamination at velocities of 10,000 fpm per ASTM C1071.
  - 7. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation. Comply with ASTM C916.
- D. Insulation material shall be a flexible, closed-cell or conformable, elastomeric insulation in sheet form: AP Armaflex AP Armaflex SA, and AP Coilflex. These products meets the requirements as defined in ASTM C 534, Grade 1 Type II, "Specification for preformed elastomeric cellular thermal insulation in sheet and tubular form".
  - 1. AP Armaflex and AP Armaflex SA insulation materials shall have a closed cell structure to prevent moisture from wicking and effectively retard heat gain to make it an efficient insulation.

AP Coilflex has a conformable cell structure allowing it to be bent on a coil line brake for tight fit in the corners.

2. Insulation materials shall be manufactured without the use of CFC's, HFC's or HCFC's. It shall be formaldehyde-free, low VOCs, fiber free, dust free and resist mold and mildew.
  3. The insulation material shall conform to meet the requirements as defined in ASTM C 1534, Standard "Specification for Flexible Polymeric Foam Sheet Insulation Used as a Thermal and Sound Adsorbing Liner for Duct Systems".
  4. Materials 2" thickness and below, shall have a flame spread index of less than 25 and a smoke developed index of less than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, latest revision. In addition, the product, when tested, shall not melt or drip flaming particles, the flame shall not be progressive and all materials shall pass simulated end-use fire tests.
  5. AP Armaflex and AP Armaflex SA materials shall have a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.25 Btu-in/h-ft<sup>2</sup> - °F at a 75°F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C 177 or ASTM C 518, latest revisions.
  6. AP Armaflex and AP Armaflex SA materials shall have a maximum water vapor transmission of 0.05 perm-inches when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96, Procedure A, latest revision.
  7. Materials shall have a maximum water absorption rate of 0.2% (%by volume), when tested in accordance with ASTM C 209.
  8. The material shall be manufactured under an independent third party supervision testing program covering the properties for fire performance, thermal conductivity and water vapor transmission.
  9. Materials must be approved for air plenums.
  10. Materials must meet NFPA 90A, NFPA 908 and UL 181 Class 1 specification.
  11. Materials must meet ASTM C 411. Materials to perform up to 250 degrees F.
  12. NRC rating 0.40 - Test Method ASTM C 423 with ASTM E 795 Type A Mounting. All product except AP Coilflex. NRC rating on the AP Coilflex is 0.60 - Test Method ASTM C 423 with ASTM E 795 Type A Mounting.
- E. Adhesive: Waterproof, fire-retardant type, ASTM C916.
- F. Liner Fasteners: Galvanized steel, self-adhesive pad, impact applied, or welded with integral or press-on head.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that ducts have been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean, foreign material removed, and dry.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Insulated ducts:
  1. Provide insulation with vapor barrier jackets.
  2. Finish with tape and vapor barrier jacket.
  3. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, hangers, and other duct penetrations.
  4. Insulate entire system including fittings, joints, flanges, fire dampers, flexible connections, and expansion joints.
- C. External Duct Insulation Application:
  1. Secure insulation with vapor barrier with wires and seal jacket joints with vapor barrier adhesive or tape to match jacket.
  2. Secure insulation without vapor barrier with staples, tape, or wires.
  3. Install without sag on underside of duct. Use adhesive or mechanical fasteners where necessary to prevent sagging. Lift duct off trapeze hangers and insert spacers.
  4. Seal vapor barrier penetrations by mechanical fasteners with vapor barrier adhesive.

5. Stop and point insulation around access doors and damper operators to allow operation without disturbing wrapping.
- D. Duct and Plenum Liner Application:
  1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
  2. Armaflex Sheet Insulation shall be adhered directly to clean, oil-free surfaces with a full cover age of Armaflex 520, 520 Black or Low VOC Spray Adhesive. Apply 520, 520 Black and Spray Adhesive to both the Armaflex surface and sheet metal.
  3. SA Armaflex sheet shall be applied directly to a clean, dry, oil-free surface.
  4. Ambient temperature for applications is between 40 degrees F and 100 degrees F.
  5. The skin side (smooth side) shall be exposed to the air stream.
  6. Butt-edge seams shall be adhered using Armaflex 520, or 520 Black Adhesive by the compression fit method to allow for expansion/contraction. Leave a 1/2" wide uncoated border at the butt edge seams on the duct surface and the insulation surface. Overlap the insulation 1/4" at the butt-edges and compress the edges into place. Apply Armaflex 520 or 520 Black. Allow 48 hours for full cure prior to operating system.
  7. Duct dimensions indicated are net inside dimensions required for air flow. Increase duct size to allow for insulation thickness.

### 3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Supply ducts from air conditioning units: Flexible glass fiber duct insulation, 1-1/2" thick.
  1. Omit duct wrap where duct liner is indicated.
- B. Transfer ducts between occupied spaces: Duct Liner, 1/2" thick.
- C. Exhaust ducts within 15' of exterior penetration: Flexible glass fiber duct insulation, 1-1/2" thick.
- D. Supply, return and exhaust ducts within 10' of air handling equipment: Duct Liner, 1/2" thick.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13



SECTION 23 07 19  
HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Jackets and accessories.
- C. Engineered wall outlet seals and refrigerant piping insulation protection.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 23 00 - Refrigerant Piping:

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- B. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.
- C. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2013.
- D. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- E. ASTM C449 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- F. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2016.
- G. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2017.
- H. ASTM C795 - Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- I. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2018.
- J. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2016.
- K. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples of any representative size illustrating each insulation type.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum three years of experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient conditions required by manufacturers of each product.

- B. Maintain temperature before, during, and after installation for minimum of 24 hours.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

### 2.2 GLASS FIBER

- A. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
  - 1. 'K' Value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 850 degrees F.
  - 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- B. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M of 0.02 perm-inches.
- C. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.
- D. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.
- E. Fibrous Glass Fabric:
  - 1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
  - 2. Blanket: 1.0 lb/cu ft density.
  - 3. Weave: 5x5.
- F. Indoor Vapor Barrier Finish:
  - 1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
  - 2. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- G. Outdoor Vapor Barrier Mastic: Vinyl emulsion type acrylic or mastic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- H. Insulating Cement: ASTM C449.

### 2.3 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 3; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
  - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F.
  - 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- B. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.

### 2.4 JACKETS

- A. PVC Plastic.
  - 1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
    - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F.
    - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
    - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - d. Thickness: 10 mil.
    - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
- B. Aluminum Jacket: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M) formed aluminum sheet.
  - 1. Thickness: 0.016 inch sheet.
  - 2. Finish: Smooth.
  - 3. Joining: Longitudinal slip joints and 2 inch laps.
  - 4. Fittings: 0.016 inch thick die shaped fitting covers with factory attached protective liner.

## 2.5 ENGINEERED WALL OUTLET SEALS AND REFRIGERANT PIPING INSULATION PROTECTION

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Airex Manufacturing, Inc: [www.airexmfg.com/#sle](http://www.airexmfg.com/#sle).
- B. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Seals HVAC piping wall penetrations with compression gasket wall mounted rigid plastic outlet cover.
  - 1. Outlet Cover Color: Gray.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature; insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, and expansion joints.
- E. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, refer to Section "Firestopping".
- F. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces (less than 10' above finished floor): Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- G. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum or PVC jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

### 3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Cooling Systems:
  - 1. Condensate Drains from Cooling Coils: 1/2" glass fiber or flexible elastomeric
  - 2. Refrigerant Suction: 1/2" elastomeric

END OF SECTION 23 07 19



SECTION 23 23 00  
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping.
- B. Refrigerant.
- C. Moisture and liquid indicators.
- D. Valves.
- E. Strainers.
- F. Check valves.
- G. Filter-driers.
- H. Engineered wall seals and insulation protection.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 710 - Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Driers; 2009.
- B. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; 2016, with Addendum (2017).
- C. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2013.
- D. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components; 2016.
- E. ASTM B280 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service; 2016.
- F. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2011 (Amended 2012).
- G. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2009.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Where more than one piping system material is specified ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure the integrity of the system is not jeopardized. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.
- B. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with 1 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Refrigerant Charging (Packed Angle) Valve: Use in liquid line between receiver shut-off valve and expansion valve.
- D. Strainers:
  - 1. Use line size strainer upstream of each automatic valve.
- E. Filter-Driers:
  - 1. Use a filter-drier immediately ahead of liquid-line controls, such as thermostatic expansion valves, solenoid valves, and moisture indicators.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store piping and specialties in shipping containers with labeling in place.
- B. Protect piping and specialties from entry of contaminating material by leaving end caps and plugs in place until installation.

- C. Dehydrate and charge components such as piping and receivers, seal prior to shipment, until connected into system.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, H58 hard drawn or O60 soft annealed.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.22 wrought copper.
  - 2. Joints: Braze, AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy.
- B. Pipe Supports and Anchors:
  - 1. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.
    - a. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
  - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  - 3. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
  - 4. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
  - 5. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
  - 6. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.
  - 7. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded.
  - 8. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.

### 2.2 MOISTURE AND LIQUID INDICATORS

- A. Indicators: Single port type, UL listed, with copper or brass body, flared or solder ends, sight glass, color coded paper moisture indicator with removable element cartridge and plastic cap; for maximum temperature of 200 degrees F and maximum working pressure of 500 psi.

### 2.3 VALVES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - 1. UL listed, globe or angle pattern, forged brass body and bonnet, phosphor bronze and stainless steel diaphragms, rising stem and handwheel, stainless steel spring, nylon seat disc, solder or flared ends, with positive backseating; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.
- B. Packed Angle Valves:
  - 1. Forged brass or nickel plated forged steel, forged brass seal caps with copper gasket, rising stem and seat with backseating, molded stem packing, solder or flared ends; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.
- C. Ball Valves:
  - 1. Two piece bolted forged brass body with teflon ball seals and copper tube extensions, brass bonnet and seal cap, chrome plated ball, stem with neoprene ring stem seals; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 300 degrees F.
- D. Service Valves:
  - 1. Forged brass body with copper stubs, brass caps, removable valve core, integral ball check valve, flared or solder ends, for maximum pressure of 500 psi.

### 2.4 STRAINERS

- A. Straight Line or Angle Line Type:
  - 1. Brass or steel shell, steel cap and flange, and replaceable cartridge, with screen of stainless steel wire or monel reinforced with brass; for maximum working pressure of 430 psi.

### 2.5 CHECK VALVES

- A. Straight Through Type:

1. Brass body and disc, phosphor-bronze or stainless steel spring, neoprene seat; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 200 degrees F.

## 2.6 FILTER-DRIERS

- A. Performance:
  1. Flow Capacity - Liquid Line: \_\_\_\_ ton, minimum, rated in accordance with AHRI 710.
  2. Pressure Drop: 2 psi, maximum, when operating at full connected evaporator capacity.
  3. Design Working Pressure: 350 psi, minimum.
- B. Cores: Molded or loose-fill molecular sieve desiccant compatible with refrigerant, activated alumina, activated charcoal, and filtration to 40 microns, with secondary filtration to 20 microns; of construction that will not pass into refrigerant lines.
- C. Construction: UL listed.
  1. Connections: As specified for applicable pipe type.

## 2.7 ENGINEERED WALL SEALS AND INSULATION PROTECTION

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Airex Manufacturing, Inc; Titan: [www.airexmfg.com/#sle](http://www.airexmfg.com/#sle).
- B. Basis of Design: Airex Manufacturing, Inc; [www.airexmfg.com/#sle](http://www.airexmfg.com/#sle).
  1. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Airex Titan Outlet.
- C. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Seals HVAC piping wall penetrations with compression gasket wall mounted rigid plastic outlet cover.
  1. Outlet Cover Color: Gray.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install refrigeration specialties in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Route piping in orderly manner, with plumbing parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- C. Install piping to conserve building space and avoid interference with use of space.
- D. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- E. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.5.
  2. Support horizontal piping as indicated.
  3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
  4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
  5. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
  6. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
- F. Arrange piping to return oil to compressor. Provide traps and loops in piping, and provide double risers as required. Slope horizontal piping 0.40 percent in direction of flow.
- G. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- H. Provide access to concealed valves and fittings.
- I. Flood piping system with nitrogen when brazing.
- J. Insulate piping and equipment; refer to Section 23 07 19.
- K. Follow ASHRAE Std 15 procedures for charging and purging of systems and for disposal of refrigerant.
- L. Provide replaceable cartridge filter-driers, with isolation valves and valved bypass.
- M. Locate expansion valve sensing bulb immediately downstream of evaporator on suction line.

- N. Provide external equalizer piping on expansion valves with refrigerant distributor connected to evaporator.
- O. Fully charge completed system with refrigerant after testing.

### 3.2 SCHEDULES

- A. Hanger Spacing for Copper Tubing.
  - 1. 1/2 inch, 5/8 inch, and 7/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. 1-1/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. 1-3/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. 1-5/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

END OF SECTION 23 23 00



SECTION 23 31 00  
HVAC DUCTS AND CASINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal ductwork.
- B. Nonmetal ductwork.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 07 13 - Duct Insulation: External insulation and duct liner.
- B. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories.
- C. Section 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units.
- D. Section 23 37 00 - Air Outlets and Inlets.
- E. Section 23 05 93 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE (FUND) - ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- B. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- C. ASTM A240/A240M - Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications; 2016.
- D. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip; 2017.
- E. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2017.
- F. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- G. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.
- H. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2018.
- I. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2015.
- J. ICC-ES AC106 - Acceptance Criteria for Predrilled Fasteners (Screw Anchors) in Masonry Elements; 2015.
- K. ICC-ES AC193 - Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2015.
- L. ICC-ES AC308 - Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2016.
- M. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2018.
- N. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2017.
- O. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2005 (Revised 2009).
- P. SMACNA (KVS) - Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines; 2001.
- Q. SMACNA (LEAK) - HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual; 2012.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. No variation of duct configuration or sizes permitted except by written permission. Size round ducts installed in place of rectangular ducts in accordance with ASHRAE table of equivalent rectangular and round ducts.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for duct materials.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of ducts and duct fittings. Record changes in fitting location and type. Show additional fittings used.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install duct sealants when temperatures are less than those recommended by sealant manufacturers.
- B. Maintain temperatures within acceptable range during and after installation of duct sealants.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DUCT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Construct ductwork to NFPA 90A standards.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel for Ducts: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M FS Type B, with G60/Z180 coating.
- B. Aluminum for Ducts: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M); aluminum sheet, alloy 3003-H14. Aluminum Connectors and Bar Stock: Alloy 6061-T651 or of equivalent strength.
- C. Stainless Steel for Ducts: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.
- D. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.
  - 1. Type: Heavy mastic or liquid used alone or with tape, suitable for joint configuration and compatible with substrates, and recommended by manufacturer for pressure class of ducts.
  - 2. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread of zero, smoke developed of zero, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. For Use With Flexible Ducts: UL labeled.
- E. Hanger Rod: ASTM A36/A36M; steel, galvanized; threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuously threaded.
- F. Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners, as follows:
  - 1. Concrete Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
  - 2. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
  - 3. Concrete Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
  - 4. Masonry Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC106.
  - 5. Concrete Adhesive Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC308.
- G. Insulated Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Two ply vinyl film supported by helically wound spring steel wire; fiberglass insulation; polyethylene vapor barrier film.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 10 inches WG positive and 1.0 inches WG negative.
    - b. Maximum Velocity: 4000 fpm.
    - c. Temperature Range: -10 degrees F to 160 degrees F.
- H. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.

### 2.3 DUCTWORK FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and support in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, and as indicated.
- B. No variation of duct configuration or size permitted except by written permission. Size round duct installed in place of rectangular ducts in accordance with ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals.
- C. Provide duct material, gages, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.

- D. Construct T's, bends, and elbows with radius of not less than 1-1/2 times width of duct on centerline. Where not possible and where rectangular elbows must be used, provide air foil turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation.
- E. Provide air foil turning vanes when rectangular elbows must be used.
- F. Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 30 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.
- G. Fabricate continuously welded round and oval duct fittings in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- H. Provide high efficiency 45 degree wye takeoffs for all branch ducts in medium and low pressure systems..
- I. Where ducts are connected to exterior wall louvers and duct outlet is smaller than louver frame, provide blank-out panels sealing louver area around duct. Use same material as duct, painted black on exterior side; seal to louver frame and duct.

## 2.4 MANUFACTURED DUCTWORK AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacture in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, and as indicated. Provide duct material, gages, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.
- B. Spiral Ducts: Machine made from round spiral lockseam duct, steel with paintlock finish.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Wesco
    - b. Wichita Sheetmetal
    - c. Substitute approved by Engineer.
- C. Double Wall Insulated Spiral Ducts: Machine made from round spiral lockseam duct, steel outer wall with paintlock finish, 1 inch thick fiberglass insulation, perforated galvanized steel inner wall; fittings manufactured with solid inner wall.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Wesco
    - b. Wichita Sheetmetal
    - c. Substitute approved by Engineer.
- D. Phenolic Ducts: Rigid thermoset phenolic resin, with 1 mil aluminum foil dual-facing. Reinforced with a 0.2 inch glass scrim.
  - 1. Panel Wall Thickness: Minimum 0.875 inch.
  - 2. Finish: UV resistant glass reinforced polyester/epoxy (GRP/GRE) cladding system.
  - 3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Kingspan Insulation LLC; The Kingspan KoolDuct System:  
[www.kingspaninsulation.us/#sle](http://www.kingspaninsulation.us/#sle).
- E. Flexible Ducts: Two ply vinyl film supported by helically wound spring steel wire.
  - 1. Insulation: Fiberglass insulation with polyethylene vapor barrier film.
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 10 inches WG positive and 1.0 inches WG negative.
  - 3. Maximum Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 10 degrees F to 160 degrees F.
- F. Transverse Duct Connection System: SMACNA "E" rated rigidly class connection, interlocking angle and duct edge connection system with sealant, gasket, cleats, and corner clips.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install, support, and seal ducts in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.

- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.
- D. Duct sizes indicated are inside clear dimensions. For lined ducts, maintain sizes inside lining.
- E. Install and seal metal and flexible ducts in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- F. Provide openings in ductwork where required to accommodate thermometers and controllers. Provide pilot tube openings where required for testing of systems, complete with metal can with spring device or screw to ensure against air leakage. Where openings are provided in insulated ductwork, install insulation material inside a metal ring.
- G. Locate ducts with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities.
- H. Use crimp joints with or without bead for joining round duct sizes 8 inch and smaller with crimp in direction of air flow.
- I. Use double nuts and lock washers on threaded rod supports.
- J. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly. Do not use flexible duct in medium pressure systems.
- K. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands and sealant plus sheet metal screws. Use a maximum of 5' of flexible duct, at final connection to diffusers only, free of kinks. Do not install above inaccessible ceilings. Do not use flexible ductwork in exposed areas.
- L. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.
- M. At exterior wall louvers, seal duct to louver frame and install blank-out panels.
- N. Exposed spiral ductwork shall be supported from top chord of structural members, utilizing steel cable hangers and adjustable cable clamps.

### 3.2 SCHEDULES

- A. Ductwork Material:
  - 1. Low Pressure Supply: Steel.
  - 2. Return and Relief: Steel.
  - 3. General Exhaust: Steel.
  - 4. Outside Air Intake: Steel.
  - 5. At contractor's option, phenolic ductwork may be used for supply and return ductwork in medium and low pressure systems.
- B. Ductwork Pressure Class:
  - 1. Supply, Return and Relief: 1 inch.
  - 2. General Exhaust: 1/2 inch.
- C. Round ductwork shall be double wall spiral where exposed. Concealed round ductwork may be spiral, double or single wall, or fabricated.

END OF SECTION 23 31 00

SECTION 23 33 00  
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air turning devices/extractors.
- B. Backdraft dampers.
- C. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
- D. Duct access doors.
- E. Duct test holes.
- F. Fire dampers.
- G. Flexible duct connections.
- H. Volume control dampers.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2018.
- B. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2005 (Revised 2009).
- C. UL 33 - Safety Heat Responsive Links for Fire-Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 555 - Standard for Fire Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 555S - Standard for Smoke Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide for shop fabricated assemblies including volume control dampers. Include electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate for shop fabricated assemblies including volume control dampers.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Provide instructions for fire dampers.
- E. Project Record Drawings: Record actual locations of access doors and test holes.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect dampers from damage to operating linkages and blades.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR TURNING DEVICES/EXTRACTORS

- A. Multi-blade device with blades aligned in short dimension; steel construction; with individually adjustable blades, mounting straps.

2.2 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Gravity Backdraft Dampers, Size 24 inches or Smaller, Furnished with Air Moving Equipment: Air moving equipment manufacturer's standard construction.

2.3 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 90A, UL 555, UL 555S, and as indicated.
- B. Provide factory sleeve and collar for each damper.

- C. Multiple Blade Dampers: Fabricate with 16 gage galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, stainless steel jamb seals, 1/8 x 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock, and 1/2 inch actuator shaft.
- D. Operators: UL listed and labelled spring return electric type suitable for 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz. Locate damper operator on exterior of duct and link to damper operating shaft.

#### 2.4 DUCT ACCESS DOORS

- A. Fabrication: Rigid and close-fitting of galvanized steel with sealing gaskets and quick fastening locking devices. For insulated ducts, install minimum 1 inch thick insulation with sheet metal cover.
  - 1. Less Than 12 inches Square: Secure with sash locks.
  - 2. Up to 18 inches Square: Provide two hinges and two sash locks.
  - 3. Up to 24 x 48 inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
  - 4. Larger Sizes: Provide an additional hinge.

#### 2.5 DUCT TEST HOLES

- A. Temporary Test Holes: Cut or drill in ducts as required. Cap with neat patches, neoprene plugs, threaded plugs, or threaded or twist-on metal caps.
- B. Permanent Test Holes: Factory fabricated, air tight flanged fittings with screw cap. Provide extended neck fittings to clear insulation.

#### 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 90A and UL 555, and as indicated.
- B. Ceiling Dampers: Galvanized steel, 22 gage frame and 16 gage flap, two layers 0.125 inch ceramic fiber on top side and one layer on bottom side for round flaps, with locking clip.
- C. Horizontal Dampers: Galvanized steel, 22 gage frame, stainless steel closure spring, and lightweight, heat retardant non-asbestos fabric blanket.
- D. Curtain Type Dampers: Galvanized steel with interlocking blades. Provide stainless steel closure springs and latches for horizontal installations. Configure with blades out of air stream except for 1.0 inch pressure class ducts up to 12 inches in height.
- E. Multiple Blade Dampers: 16 gage galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, 1/8 x 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock.
- F. Fusible Links: UL 33, separate at 160 degrees F with adjustable link straps for combination fire/balancing dampers.

#### 2.7 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, and as indicated.
- B. Flexible Duct Connections: Fabric crimped into metal edging strip.
  - 1. Fabric: UL listed fire-retardant neoprene coated woven glass fiber fabric to NFPA 90A, minimum density 30 oz per sq yd.
    - a. Net Fabric Width: Approximately 2 inches wide.
  - 2. Metal: 3 inches wide, 24 gage thick galvanized steel.
- C. Leaded Vinyl Sheet: Minimum 0.55 inch thick, 0.87 lbs per sq ft, 10 dB attenuation in 10 to 10,000 Hz range.

#### 2.8 VOLUME CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, and as indicated.
- B. Splitter Dampers:

1. Material: Same gage as duct to 24 inches size in either direction, and two gages heavier for sizes over 24 inches.
  2. Blade: Fabricate of single thickness sheet metal to streamline shape, secured with continuous hinge or rod.
  3. Operator: Minimum 1/4 inch diameter rod in self aligning, universal joint action, flanged bushing with set screw .
- C. Single Blade Dampers: Fabricate for duct sizes up to 6 x 30 inch.
- D. Multi-Blade Damper: Fabricate of opposed blade pattern with maximum blade sizes 8 x 72 inch. Assemble center and edge crimped blades in prime coated or galvanized channel frame with suitable hardware.
- E. End Bearings: Except in round ducts 12 inches and smaller, provide end bearings. On multiple blade dampers, provide oil-impregnated nylon or sintered bronze bearings.
- F. Quadrants:
1. Provide locking, indicating quadrant regulators on single and multi-blade dampers.
  2. On insulated ducts mount quadrant regulators on stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters.
- G. Remote Operators:
1. Where dampers are installed above inaccessible ceilings, provide remote operator assembly, consisting of worm gear operated self locking regulator, screwdriver operated flexible shaft and couplings, and ceiling termination bracket with 1" diameter access cap with white finish.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 90A, and follow SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible. Refer to Section 23 31 00 for duct construction and pressure class.
- B. Provide duct access doors for inspection and cleaning before and after filters, coils, fans, automatic dampers, at fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and elsewhere as indicated. Provide minimum 8 x 8 inch size for hand access, 18 x 18 inch size for shoulder access, and as indicated. Provide 4 x 4 inch for balancing dampers only. Review locations prior to fabrication.
- C. Provide duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.
- D. Provide fire dampers and combination fire and smoke dampers at locations indicated, where ducts and outlets pass through fire rated components, and where required by Authorities Having Jurisdiction. Install with required perimeter mounting angles, sleeves, breakaway duct connections, corrosion resistant springs, bearings, bushings and hinges.
- E. Install smoke dampers and combination smoke and fire dampers in accordance with NFPA 92.
- F. Demonstrate re-setting of fire dampers to Owner's representative.
- G. At fans and motorized equipment associated with ducts, provide flexible duct connections immediately adjacent to the equipment.
- H. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches are taken from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install minimum 2 duct widths from duct take-off.
- I. Provide balancing dampers where indicated on drawings.
- J. Where dampers are installed above inaccessible ceilings, provide remote damper operator.
- K. Provide balancing dampers on low pressure duct take-offs to diffusers, grilles, and registers, regardless of whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, grille, or register assembly. Dampers may not be shown on drawings, but shall be provided regardless. Omit dampers only where noted on drawings. Dampers are to be located as close to main as possible while remaining accessible.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00





SECTION 23 34 23  
POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cabinet exhaust fans.
- B. Ceiling exhaust fans.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA (DIR) - (Directory of) Products Licensed Under AMCA International Certified Ratings Program; 2015.
- B. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook; 2016.
- C. AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans; 2005.
- D. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating; 2016.
- E. AMCA 300 - Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans; 2014.
- F. AMCA 301 - Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data; 2014.
- G. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2017.
- H. UL 705 - Power Ventilators; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 762 - Outline of Investigation for Power Roof Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on fans and accessories including fan curves with specified operating point clearly plotted, power, RPM, sound power levels at rated capacity, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation instructions.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for lubrication, motor and drive replacement, spare parts list, and wiring diagrams.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Permanent ventilators may not be used for ventilation during construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER VENTILATORS - GENERAL

- A. Static and Dynamically Balanced: AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans.
- B. Performance Ratings: Determined in accordance with AMCA 210 and bearing the AMCA Certified Rating Seal.
- C. Sound Ratings: AMCA 301, tested to AMCA 300 and bearing AMCA Certified Sound Rating Seal.
- D. Fabrication: Conform to AMCA 99.
- E. UL Compliance: UL listed and labeled, designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with UL 705.
- F. Electrical Components: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

G. Kitchen Hood Exhaust Fans: Comply with requirements of NFPA 96 and UL 762.

## 2.2 CABINET AND CEILING EXHAUST FANS

- A. Centrifugal Fan Unit: V-belt or direct driven with galvanized steel housing lined with acoustic insulation, resilient mounted motor, gravity backdraft damper in discharge.
- B. Disconnect Switch: Cord and plug in housing for thermal overload protected motor.
- C. Grille: Molded white plastic.
- D. Sheaves: Cast iron or steel, dynamically balanced, bored to fit shafts and keyed; variable and adjustable pitch motor sheaves selected so required rpm is obtained with sheaves set at mid-position; fan shaft with self-aligning pre-lubricated ball bearings.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide backdraft dampers on outlet from cabinet and ceiling exhausters fans and as indicated.

END OF SECTION 23 34 23

SECTION 23 37 00  
AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Diffusers.
- B. Registers/grilles.
- C. Louvers:
  - 1. Combination louvers.
- D. Roof hoods.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 70 - Method of Testing the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets; 2006 (Reaffirmed 2011).
- B. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for equipment required for this project. Review outlets and inlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submission. Submit schedule of outlets and inlets showing type, size, location, application, and noise level.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test and rate air outlet and inlet performance in accordance with ASHRAE Std 70.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Carnes Company HVAC: [www.carnes.com](http://www.carnes.com).
- B. Krueger: [www.krueger-hvac.com/#sle](http://www.krueger-hvac.com/#sle).
- C. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com/#sle](http://www.price-hvac.com/#sle).
- D. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com/#sle](http://www.titus-hvac.com/#sle).

2.2 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

- A. Type and performance are scheduled on the drawings.
- B. Coordinate finish of all devices with Architect.

2.3 COMBINATION LOUVERS

- A. Damper-combined, drainable louver: actuator voltage as shown on drawings.
- B. Size: As indicated on the drawings.
- C. Material: Fabricated galvanized steel.
- D. Paint Finish and Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- E. Sleeve or Flange: Factory-mounted standard.
- F. Linkage: Extended.
- G. Mounting: Furnish with exterior flat flange for installation.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Comply with SMACNA (ASMM) for flashing/counter-flashing of roof penetrations and supports for roof curbs and roof mounted equipment.
- C. Check location of outlets and inlets and make necessary adjustments in position to conform with architectural features, symmetry, and lighting arrangement.
- D. Install diffusers to ductwork with air tight connection.
- E. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, and grilles and registers, despite whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, or grille and register assembly.
- F. Paint ductwork visible behind air outlets and inlets matte black. Coordinate with G.C.

### 3.2 SCHEDULES

- A. On Drawings.

END OF SECTION 23 37 00

SECTION 23 40 00  
HVAC AIR CLEANING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Disposable, extended area panel filters.
- B. Filter frames.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 52.2 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size; 2017.
- B. UL 900 - Standard for Air Filter Units; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide one set of disposable panel filters. Filters shall be delivered to Owner.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FILTER MANUFACTURERS

- A. American Filtration Inc: [www.americanfiltration.com/#sle](http://www.americanfiltration.com/#sle).
- B. AAF International/American Air Filter: [www.aafintl.com/#sle](http://www.aafintl.com/#sle).
- C. Camfil Farr Company: [www.camfilfarr.com/#sle](http://www.camfilfarr.com/#sle).

2.2 DISPOSABLE, EXTENDED AREA PANEL FILTERS

- A. Media: UL 900 Class 1, pleated, lofted, non-woven, reinforced cotton fabric; supported and bonded to welded wire grid by corrugated aluminum separators.
  - 1. Frame: Non-flammable.
  - 2. Nominal thickness: 2 inches.
- B. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV): 8, when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

2.3 FILTER FRAMES AND HOUSINGS

- A. General: Fabricate filter frames and supporting structures of 16 gage, 0.0598 inch galvanized steel or extruded aluminum T-section construction with necessary gasketing between frames and walls.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install air cleaning devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Prevent passage of unfiltered air around filters with felt, rubber, or neoprene gaskets.
- C. Install filter gage static pressure taps upstream and downstream of high efficiency filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum, in accessible position. Adjust and level.
- D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with clean set.
- E. Ensure that filters are easily removable from equipment, and that access is not blocked by other installations.

END OF SECTION 23 40 00



## SECTION 23 81 26.13

### SMALL-CAPACITY SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONERS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air-source heat pumps.
- B. Forced air furnaces.
- C. Indoor air handling (fan and coil) units for ductless systems.
- D. Controls.

##### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 210/240 - Standard for Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment; 2008, Including All Addenda.
- B. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; 2016, with Addendum (2017).
- C. ASHRAE Std 23.1 - Methods of Testing for Rating the Performance of Positive Displacement Refrigerant Compressors and Condensing Units that Operate at Subcritical Temperatures of the Refrigerant; 2010.
- D. NFPA 54 - National Fuel Gas Code; 2018.
- E. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2018.
- F. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2018.
- G. UL 207 - Standard for Refrigerant-Containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide rated capacities, weights, accessories, electrical nameplate data, and wiring diagrams.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate assembly, required clearances, and location and size of field connections.
- D. Design Data: Indicate refrigerant pipe sizing.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate rigging, assembly, and installation instructions.
- F. Warranty: Submit manufacturers warranty and ensure forms have been filled out in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

##### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 INDOOR AIR HANDLING UNITS FOR DUCTLESS SYSTEMS

- A. Indoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, factory assembled, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, supply fan, evaporator coil, and controls; wired for single power connection with control transformer.
- B. Evaporator Coils: Copper tube aluminum fin assembly, galvanized or polymer drain pan sloped in all directions to drain, drain connection, refrigerant piping connections, restricted distributor or thermostatic expansion valve.
  - 1. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 and UL 207.
  - 2. Manufacturer: System manufacturer.
- C. Remote Actuators:

## 2.2 OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Outdoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, with compressor and condenser.
  - 1. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 with testing in accordance with ASHRAE Std 23.1 and UL 207.
- B. Coil: Air-cooled, aluminum fins bonded to copper tubes.
- C. Accessories: Filter drier, high pressure switch (manual reset), low pressure switch (automatic reset), service valves and gauge ports, thermometer well (in liquid line).
  - 1. Provide thermostatic expansion valves.
- D. Operating Controls:
  - 1. Control by room thermostat to maintain room temperature setting.

## 2.3 GAS FURNACE COMPONENTS

- A. Burner: Atmospheric type with adjustable combustion air supply,
  - 1. Electronic pilot ignition, with electric spark igniter.
  - 2. Combustion air damper with synchronous spring return damper motor.
  - 3. Non-corrosive combustion air blower with permanently lubricated motor.
- B. Burner Safety Controls:
  - 1. Thermocouple Sensor: Prevents opening of gas valve until pilot flame is proven and stops gas flow on ignition failure.
  - 2. Flame Rollout Switch: Installed on burner box and prevents operation.
  - 3. Vent Safety Shutoff Sensor: Temperature sensor installed on draft hood and prevents operation, manual reset.
  - 4. Limit Control: Fixed stop at maximum permissible setting, de-energizes burner on excessive bonnet temperature, automatic resets.
- C. Operating Controls:
  - 1. Cycle burner by room thermostat to maintain room temperature setting.
  - 2. Supply fan energized from bonnet temperature independent of burner controls, with adjustable timed off delay and fixed timed on delay, with manual switch for continuous fan operation.
- D. Flue Termination: Concentric roof kit.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrates are ready for installation of units and openings are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that proper power supply is available and in correct location.
- C. Verify that proper fuel supply is available for connection.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install in accordance with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- C. Install gas fired furnaces in accordance with NFPA 54.
- D. Install refrigeration systems in accordance with ASHRAE Std 15.
- E. Pipe drain from Cooling coils and furnaces to nearest floor drain.

END OF SECTION 23 81 26.13



## SECTION 26 05 19

### LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Single conductor building wire.
- B. Metal-clad cable.
- C. Wiring connectors.
- D. Electrical tape.
- E. Wire pulling lubricant.
- F. Cable ties.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems: Additional requirements for grounding conductors and grounding connectors.
- C. Section 26 05 36 - Cable Trays for Electrical Systems: Additional installation requirements for cables installed in cable tray systems.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B3 - Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire; 2013.
- B. ASTM B8 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft; 2011 (Reapproved 2017).
- C. ASTM B33 - Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes; 2010 (Reapproved 2014).
- D. ASTM B787/B787M - Standard Specification for 19 Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductors for Subsequent Insulation; 2004 (Reapproved 2014).
- E. ASTM D3005 - Standard Specification for Low-Temperature Resistant Vinyl Chloride Plastic Pressure-Sensitive Electrical Insulating Tape; 2017.
- F. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- G. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Metal-Clad Cable (MC); 2012.
- H. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; 2009.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 486D - Sealed Wire Connector Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 510 - Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene, and Rubber Insulating Tape; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 1569 - Metal-Clad Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate sizes of raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures installed under other sections with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
2. Coordinate with electrical equipment installed under other sections to provide terminations suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conductors and cables, including detailed information on materials, construction, ratings, listings, and available sizes, configurations, and stranding.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install or otherwise handle thermoplastic-insulated conductors at temperatures lower than 14 degrees F, unless otherwise permitted by manufacturer's instructions. When installation below this temperature is unavoidable, notify Architect and obtain direction before proceeding with work.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conductors and cables for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Provide single conductor building wire installed in suitable raceway unless otherwise indicated, permitted, or required.
- C. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable is not permitted.
- D. Underground feeder and branch-circuit cable is not permitted.
- E. Service entrance cable is not permitted.
- F. Armored cable is not permitted.
- G. Metal-clad cable is permitted only as follows:
  1. Where not otherwise restricted, may be used:
    - a. Where concealed above accessible ceilings for final connections from junction boxes to luminaires.
      - 1) Maximum Length: 6 feet.

#### 2.2 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, etc. as required for a complete operating system.
- D. Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- E. Thermoplastic-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 83.
- F. Thermoset-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 44.
- G. Conductor Material:
  1. Provide copper conductors only. Aluminum conductors are not acceptable for this project. Conductor sizes indicated are based on copper.
  2. Copper Conductors: Soft drawn annealed, 98 percent conductivity, uncoated copper conductors complying with ASTM B3, ASTM B8, or ASTM B787/B787M unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Tinned Copper Conductors: Comply with ASTM B33.

- H. Minimum Conductor Size:
    - 1. Branch Circuits: 12 AWG.
      - a. Exceptions:
        - 1) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 75 feet: 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
        - 2) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 150 feet: 8 AWG, for voltage drop.
  - I. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
  - J. Conductor Color Coding:
    - 1. Color code conductors as indicated unless otherwise required by the authority having jurisdiction. Maintain consistent color coding throughout project.
    - 2. Color Coding Method: Integrally colored insulation.
    - 3. Color Code:
      - a. 208Y/120 V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire System:
        - 1) Phase A: Black.
        - 2) Phase B: Red.
        - 3) Phase C: Blue.
        - 4) Neutral/Grounded: White.
      - b. Equipment Ground, All Systems: Green.
- 2.3 SINGLE CONDUCTOR BUILDING WIRE
- A. Description: Single conductor insulated wire.
  - B. Conductor Stranding:
    - 1. Feeders and Branch Circuits:
      - a. Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Solid.
      - b. Size 8 AWG and Larger: Stranded.
  - C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
  - D. Insulation:
    - 1. Copper Building Wire: Type THHN/THWN or THHN/THWN-2.
- 2.4 METAL-CLAD CABLE
- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type MC cable listed and labeled as complying with UL 1569, and listed for use in classified firestop systems to be used.
  - B. Conductor Stranding:
    - 1. Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Solid.
    - 2. Size 8 AWG and Larger: Stranded.
  - C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
  - D. Insulation: Type THHN, THHN/THWN, or THHN/THWN-2.
  - E. Grounding: Full-size integral equipment grounding conductor.
  - F. Armor: Steel, interlocked tape.
- 2.5 WIRING CONNECTORS
- A. Description: Wiring connectors appropriate for the application, suitable for use with the conductors to be connected, and listed as complying with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C as applicable.
  - B. Wiring Connectors for Splices and Taps:
    - 1. Copper Conductors Size 8 AWG and Smaller: Use twist-on insulated spring connectors.
    - 2. Copper Conductors Size 6 AWG and Larger: Use mechanical connectors or compression connectors.
  - C. Do not use insulation-piercing or insulation-displacement connectors designed for use with conductors without stripping insulation.

- D. Do not use push-in wire connectors as a substitute for twist-on insulated spring connectors.
- E. Twist-on Insulated Spring Connectors: Rated 600 V, 221 degrees F for standard applications and 302 degrees F for high temperature applications; pre-filled with sealant and listed as complying with UL 486D for damp and wet locations.
- F. Mechanical Connectors: Provide bolted type or set-screw type.
- G. Compression Connectors: Provide circumferential type or hex type crimp configuration.

## 2.6 WIRING ACCESSORIES

- A. Electrical Tape:
  - 1. Vinyl Color Coding Electrical Tape: Integrally colored to match color code indicated; listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F.
  - 2. Vinyl Insulating Electrical Tape: Complying with ASTM D3005 and listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; conformable for application down to 0 degrees F and suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F.
- B. Wire Pulling Lubricant: Listed; suitable for use with the conductors or cables to be installed and suitable for use at the installation temperature.
- C. Cable Ties: Material and tensile strength rating suitable for application.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.
- B. Verify that work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.
- C. Verify that raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures are installed and are properly sized to accommodate conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70.
- D. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Circuiting Requirements:
  - 1. Unless dimensioned, circuit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
  - 2. When circuit destination is indicated without specific routing, determine exact routing required.
  - 3. Arrange circuiting to minimize splices.
  - 4. Include circuit lengths required to install connected devices within 10 ft of location indicated.
  - 5. Maintain separation of Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits in accordance with NFPA 70.
  - 6. Common Neutrals: Unless otherwise indicated, sharing of neutral/grounded conductors among up to three single phase branch circuits of different phases installed in the same raceway is not permitted. Provide dedicated neutral/grounded conductor for each individual branch circuit.
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- D. Install metal-clad cable (Type MC) in accordance with NECA 120.
- E. Installation in Raceway:
  - 1. Tape ends of conductors and cables to prevent infiltration of moisture and other contaminants.
  - 2. Pull all conductors and cables together into raceway at same time.
  - 3. Do not damage conductors and cables or exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tension and sidewall pressure.

4. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant where necessary, except when lubricant is not recommended by the manufacturer.
- F. Paralleled Conductors: Install conductors of the same length and terminate in the same manner.
- G. Secure and support conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from raceways, piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- H. Terminate cables using suitable fittings.
  1. Metal-Clad Cable (Type MC):
    - a. Use listed fittings.
    - b. Cut cable armor only using specialized tools to prevent damaging conductors or insulation. Do not use hacksaw or wire cutters to cut armor.
- I. Install conductors with a minimum of 12 inches of slack at each outlet.
- J. Neatly train and bundle conductors inside boxes, wireways, panelboards and other equipment enclosures.
- K. Group or otherwise identify neutral/grounded conductors with associated ungrounded conductors inside enclosures in accordance with NFPA 70.
- L. Make wiring connections using specified wiring connectors.
  1. Make splices and taps only in accessible boxes. Do not pull splices into raceways or make splices in conduit bodies or wiring gutters.
  2. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors.
  3. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate insertion into connector.
  4. Clean contact surfaces on conductors and connectors to suitable remove corrosion, oxides, and other contaminants. Do not use wire brush on plated connector surfaces.
  5. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  6. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.
- M. Insulate splices and taps that are made with uninsulated connectors using methods suitable for the application, with insulation and mechanical strength at least equivalent to unspliced conductors.
- N. Insulate ends of spare conductors using vinyl insulating electrical tape.
- O. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- P. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide final connections to all equipment and devices, including those furnished by others, as required for a complete operating system.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19



## SECTION 26 05 26

### GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Grounding and bonding requirements.
- B. Conductors for grounding and bonding.
- C. Connectors for grounding and bonding.
- D. Ground bars.
- E. Ground rod electrodes.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Additional requirements for conductors for grounding and bonding, including conductor color coding.
- B. Section 26 05 36 - Cable Trays for Electrical Systems: Additional grounding and bonding requirements for cable tray systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEEE 81 - IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Grounding System; 2012.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- C. NEMA GR 1 - Grounding Rod Electrodes and Grounding Rod Electrode Couplings; 2007.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify exact locations of underground metal water service pipe entrances to building.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide steel reinforcement complying with specified requirements for concrete-encased electrode.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install ground rod electrodes until final backfill and compaction is complete.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for grounding and bonding system components.
- C. Field quality control test reports.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of grounding electrode system components and connections.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.

- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Existing Work: Where existing grounding and bonding system components are indicated to be reused, they may be reused only where they are free from corrosion, integrity and continuity are verified, and where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- C. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required components, conductors, connectors, conduit, boxes, fittings, supports, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete grounding and bonding system.
- D. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- E. Grounding System Resistance:
  - 1. Achieve specified grounding system resistance under normally dry conditions unless otherwise approved by Architect. Precipitation within the previous 48 hours does not constitute normally dry conditions.
  - 2. Grounding Electrode System: Not greater than 5 ohms to ground, when tested according to IEEE 81 using "fall-of-potential" method.
- F. Grounding Electrode System:
  - 1. Provide connection to required and supplemental grounding electrodes indicated to form grounding electrode system.
    - a. Provide continuous grounding electrode conductors without splice or joint.
    - b. Install grounding electrode conductors in raceway where exposed to physical damage. Bond grounding electrode conductor to metallic raceways at each end with bonding jumper.
  - 2. Metal Underground Water Pipe(s):
    - a. Provide connection to underground metal domestic and fire protection (where present) water service pipe(s) that are in direct contact with earth for at least 10 feet at an accessible location not more than 5 feet from the point of entrance to the building.
    - b. Provide bonding jumper(s) around insulating joints/pipes as required to make pipe electrically continuous.
    - c. Provide bonding jumper around water meter of sufficient length to permit removal of meter without disconnecting jumper.
  - 3. Metal Building or Structure Frame:
    - a. Provide connection to metal building or structure frame effectively grounded in accordance with NFPA 70 at nearest accessible location.
  - 4. Concrete-Encased Electrode:
    - a. Provide connection to concrete-encased electrode consisting of not less than 20 feet of either steel reinforcing bars or bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG embedded within concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with earth in accordance with NFPA 70.
  - 5. Ground Rod Electrode(s):
    - a. Provide three electrodes in an equilateral triangle configuration unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - b. Space electrodes not less than 10 feet from each other and any other ground electrode.



- c. Where location is not indicated, locate electrode(s) at least 5 feet outside building perimeter foundation as near as possible to electrical service entrance; where possible, locate in softscape (uncovered) area.
    - 6. Provide additional ground electrode(s) as required to achieve specified grounding electrode system resistance.
    - 7. Ground Bar: Provide ground bar, separate from service equipment enclosure, for common connection point of grounding electrode system bonding jumpers as permitted in NFPA 70. Connect grounding electrode conductor provided for service-supplied system grounding to this ground bar.
      - a. Ground Bar Size: 1/4 by 2 by 12 inches unless otherwise indicated or required.
  - G. Separately Derived System Grounding:
    - 1. Separately derived systems include, but are not limited to:
      - a. Transformers (except autotransformers such as buck-boost transformers).
      - b. Generators, when neutral is switched in the transfer switch.
    - 2. Provide grounding electrode conductor to connect derived system grounded conductor to nearest effectively grounded metal building frame. Unless otherwise indicated, make connection at neutral (grounded) bus in source enclosure.
    - 3. Provide bonding jumper to connect derived system grounded conductor to nearest metal building frame and nearest metal water piping in the area served by the derived system, where not already used as a grounding electrode for the derived system. Make connection at same location as grounding electrode conductor connection.
    - 4. Provide system bonding jumper to connect system grounded conductor to equipment ground bus. Make connection at same location as grounding electrode conductor connection. Do not make any other connections between neutral (grounded) conductors and ground on load side of separately derived system disconnect.
    - 5. Where the source and first disconnecting means are in separate enclosures, provide supply-side bonding jumper between source and first disconnecting means.
  - H. Bonding and Equipment Grounding:
    - 1. Provide bonding for equipment grounding conductors, equipment ground busses, metallic equipment enclosures, metallic raceways and boxes, device grounding terminals, and other normally non-current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors/equipment or likely to become energized as indicated and in accordance with NFPA 70.
    - 2. Provide insulated equipment grounding conductor in each feeder and branch circuit raceway. Do not use raceways as sole equipment grounding conductor.
    - 3. Where circuit conductor sizes are increased for voltage drop, increase size of equipment grounding conductor proportionally in accordance with NFPA 70.
    - 4. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
    - 5. Terminate branch circuit equipment grounding conductors on solidly bonded equipment ground bus only. Do not terminate on neutral (grounded) or isolated/insulated ground bus.
    - 6. Provide bonding jumper across expansion or expansion/deflection fittings provided to accommodate conduit movement.
    - 7. Provide bonding for interior metal piping systems in accordance with NFPA 70. This includes, but is not limited to:
      - a. Metal water piping where not already effectively bonded to metal underground water pipe used as grounding electrode.
      - b. Metal gas piping.
    - 8. Provide bonding for metal building frame.
  - I. Cable Tray Systems: Also comply with Section 26 05 36.
- 2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING COMPONENTS
- A. General Requirements:

1. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
2. Provide products listed and labeled as complying with UL 467 where applicable.
- B. Conductors for Grounding and Bonding, in Addition to Requirements of Section 26 05 26:
  1. Use insulated copper conductors unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) Use bare copper conductors where installed underground in direct contact with earth.
      - 2) Use bare copper conductors where directly encased in concrete (not in raceway).
- C. Connectors for Grounding and Bonding:
  1. Description: Connectors appropriate for the application and suitable for the conductors and items to be connected; listed and labeled as complying with UL 467.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, use exothermic welded connections for underground, concealed and other inaccessible connections.
  3. Unless otherwise indicated, use mechanical connectors, compression connectors, or exothermic welded connections for accessible connections.
- D. Ground Bars:
  1. Description: Copper rectangular ground bars with mounting brackets and insulators.
  2. Size: As indicated.
  3. Holes for Connections: As indicated or as required for connections to be made.
- E. Ground Rod Electrodes:
  1. Comply with NEMA GR 1.
  2. Material: Copper-bonded (copper-clad) steel.
  3. Size: 3/4 inch diameter by 10 feet length, unless otherwise indicated.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that work likely to damage grounding and bonding system components has been completed.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install grounding and bonding system components in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Ground Rod Electrodes: Unless otherwise indicated, install ground rod electrodes vertically. Where encountered rock prohibits vertical installation, install at 45 degree angle or bury horizontally in trench at least 30 inches (750 mm) deep in accordance with NFPA 70 or provide ground plates.
  1. Outdoor Installations: Unless otherwise indicated, install with top of rod 6 inches below finished grade.
- D. Make grounding and bonding connections using specified connectors.
  1. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate insertion into connector.
  2. Remove nonconductive paint, enamel, or similar coating at threads, contact points, and contact surfaces.
  3. Exothermic Welds: Make connections using molds and weld material suitable for the items to be connected in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  5. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.

E. Identify grounding and bonding system components in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform ground electrode resistance tests under normally dry conditions. Precipitation within the previous 48 hours does not constitute normally dry conditions.
- B. Investigate and correct deficiencies where measured ground resistances do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Submit detailed reports indicating inspection and testing results and corrective actions taken.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26



## SECTION 26 05 29

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Support and attachment components for equipment, conduit, cable, boxes, and other electrical work.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 34 - Conduit: Additional support and attachment requirements for conduits.
- B. Section 26 05 36 - Cable Trays for Electrical Systems: Additional support and attachment requirements for cable tray.
- C. Section 26 05 37 - Boxes: Additional support and attachment requirements for boxes.
- D. Section 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting: Additional support and attachment requirements for interior luminaires.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- C. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2015.
- D. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.
- E. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 5B - Strut-Type Channel Raceways and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and arrangement of supports and bases with the actual equipment and components to be installed.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide additional framing and materials required for installation.
  - 3. Coordinate compatibility of support and attachment components with mounting surfaces at the installed locations.
  - 4. Coordinate the arrangement of supports with ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for metal channel (strut) framing systems, non-penetrating rooftop supports, and post-installed concrete and masonry anchors.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Comply with applicable building code.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

#### A. General Requirements:

1. Provide all required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for the complete installation of electrical work.
2. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended, where applicable.
3. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for the load to be supported. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.
4. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
5. Do not use wire, chain, perforated pipe strap, or wood for permanent supports unless specifically indicated or permitted.
6. Steel Components: Use corrosion resistant materials suitable for the environment where installed.
  - a. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.
  - b. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

#### B. Conduit and Cable Supports: Straps, clamps, etc. suitable for the conduit or cable to be supported.

1. Conduit Straps: One-hole or two-hole type; steel or malleable iron.
2. Conduit Clamps: Bolted type unless otherwise indicated.

#### C. Outlet Box Supports: Hangers, brackets, etc. suitable for the boxes to be supported.

#### D. Metal Channel (Strut) Framing Systems: Factory-fabricated continuous-slot metal channel (strut) and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field-assembly of supports.

1. Comply with MFMA-4.
2. Channel Material:
  - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use painted steel or zinc-plated steel.
  - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel.

#### E. Hanger Rods: Threaded zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.

1. Minimum Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
  - a. Equipment Supports: 1/2 inch diameter.
  - b. Single Conduit up to 1 inch (27mm) trade size: 1/4 inch diameter.
  - c. Single Conduit larger than 1 inch (27mm) trade size: 3/8 inch diameter.
  - d. Trapeze Support for Multiple Conduits: 3/8 inch diameter.
  - e. Outlet Boxes: 1/4 inch diameter.
  - f. Luminaires: 1/4 inch diameter.

#### F. Anchors and Fasteners:

1. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the anchor and fastener types indicated for the specified applications.
2. Concrete: Use preset concrete inserts, expansion anchors, or screw anchors.
3. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
4. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
5. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.
6. Steel: Use beam clamps, machine bolts, or welded threaded studs.
7. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
8. Plastic and lead anchors are not permitted.
9. Powder-actuated fasteners are not permitted.
10. Hammer-driven anchors and fasteners are not permitted.
11. Preset Concrete Inserts: Continuous metal channel (strut) and spot inserts specifically designed to be cast in concrete ceilings, walls, and floors.

- a. Comply with MFMA-4.
- b. Channel Material: Use galvanized steel.
- c. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of metal channel (strut) framing system.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive support and attachment components.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install support and attachment components in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- D. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- E. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- F. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- G. Equipment Support and Attachment:
  - 1. Use metal fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel (strut) to support equipment as required.
  - 2. Use metal channel (strut) secured to studs to support equipment surface-mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.
  - 3. Use metal channel (strut) to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide space between equipment and mounting surface.
  - 4. Unless otherwise indicated, mount floor-mounted equipment on properly sized 3 inch high concrete pad constructed in accordance with Section 03 30 00.
  - 5. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
- H. Conduit Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 05 34.
- I. Box Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 05 37.
- J. Interior Luminaire Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 51 00.
- K. Preset Concrete Inserts: Use manufacturer provided closure strips to inhibit concrete seepage during concrete pour.
- L. Secure fasteners according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- M. Remove temporary supports.

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect support and attachment components for damage and defects.
- B. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- C. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective support and attachment components.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29





## SECTION 26 05 34

### CONDUIT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- B. Intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- C. Flexible metal conduit (FMC).
- D. Liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC).
- E. Electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- F. Rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit.
- G. Conduit fittings.
- H. Accessories.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
  - 1. Includes additional requirements for fittings for grounding and bonding.
- C. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 37 - Boxes.
- E. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- F. Section 26 21 00 - Low-Voltage Electrical Service Entrance: Additional requirements for electrical service conduits.
- G. Section 27 10 00 - Structured Cabling: Additional requirements for communications systems conduits.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C80.1 - American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC); 2015.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - American National Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel (EMT-S); 2015.
- C. ANSI C80.6 - American National Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit (EIMC); 2005.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- E. NECA 101 - Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT); 2013.
- F. NECA 111 - Standard for Installing Nonmetallic Raceways (RNC, ENT, LFNC); 2003.
- G. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2014.
- H. NEMA TC 2 - Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit; 2013.
- I. NEMA TC 3 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing; 2016.
- J. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. UL 1 - Flexible Metal Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 6 - Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 360 - Liquid-Tight Flexible Steel Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 514B - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 651 - Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

- P. UL 797 - Electrical Metallic Tubing-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 1242 - Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate minimum sizes of conduits with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
  - 2. Coordinate the arrangement of conduits with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
  - 3. Verify exact conduit termination locations required for boxes, enclosures, and equipment installed under other sections or by others.
  - 4. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide roof penetrations that preserve the integrity of the roofing system and do not void the roof warranty.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not begin installation of conductors and cables until installation of conduit is complete between outlet, junction and splicing points.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conduits and fittings.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing for conduits installed underground, conduits embedded within concrete slabs, and conduits 2 inch (53 mm) trade size and larger.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store conduit and fittings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUIT APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conduit and associated fittings for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the conduit types indicated for the specified applications. Where more than one listed application applies, comply with the most restrictive requirements. Where conduit type for a particular application is not specified, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- C. Underground:
  - 1. Under Slab on Grade: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or rigid PVC conduit.
  - 2. Exterior, Direct-Buried: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metallic conduit (IMC), or rigid PVC conduit.
  - 3. Exterior, Embedded Within Concrete: Use rigid PVC conduit.
  - 4. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit where emerging from underground.

5. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit larger than 2 inch (53 mm) trade size is provided, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit elbows for bends.
  6. Where steel conduit is installed in direct contact with earth where soil has a resistivity of less than 2000 ohm-centimeters or is characterized as severely corrosive based on soils report or local experience, use corrosion protection tape to provide supplementary corrosion protection.
  7. Where steel conduit emerges from concrete into soil, use corrosion protection tape to provide supplementary corrosion protection for a minimum of 4 inches on either side of where conduit emerges.
- D. Embedded Within Concrete:
    1. Within Slab on Grade: Not permitted.
    2. Within Slab Above Ground: Not permitted.
  - E. Concealed Within Masonry Walls: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - F. Concealed Within Hollow Stud Walls: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - G. Concealed Above Accessible Ceilings: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - H. Interior, Damp or Wet Locations: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
  - I. Exposed, Interior, Not Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - J. Exposed, Interior, Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
    1. Locations subject to physical damage include, but are not limited to:
      - a. Where exposed below 8 feet, except within electrical and communication rooms or closets.
  - K. Exposed, Exterior: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
  - L. Concealed, Exterior, Not Embedded in Concrete or in Contact With Earth: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
  - M. Connections to Luminaires Above Accessible Ceilings: Use flexible metal conduit.
    1. Maximum Length: 6 feet.
  - N. Connections to Vibrating Equipment:
    1. Dry Locations: Use flexible metal conduit.
    2. Damp, Wet, or Corrosive Locations: Use liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
    3. Maximum Length: 6 feet unless otherwise indicated.
    4. Vibrating equipment includes, but is not limited to:
      - a. Motors.

## 2.2 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Service Conduits: Also comply with Section 26 21 00.
- B. Communications Systems Conduits: Also comply with Section 27 10 00.
- C. Fittings for Grounding and Bonding: Also comply with Section 26 05 26.
- D. Provide all conduit, fittings, supports, and accessories required for a complete raceway system.
- E. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- F. Minimum Conduit Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
  1. Branch Circuits: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
  2. Control Circuits: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
  3. Flexible Connections to Luminaires: 3/8 inch (12 mm) trade size.

4. Underground, Interior: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
  5. Underground, Exterior: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
  - G. Where conduit size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- 2.3 GALVANIZED STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)
- A. Manufacturers:
    1. Allied Tube & Conduit: [www.alliedeg.com/#sle](http://www.alliedeg.com/#sle).
    2. Republic Conduit: [www.republic-conduit.com/#sle](http://www.republic-conduit.com/#sle).
    3. Wheatland Tube Company: [www.wheatland.com/#sle](http://www.wheatland.com/#sle).
  - B. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC galvanized steel rigid metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6.
  - C. Fittings:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc: [www.bptfittings.com/#sle](http://www.bptfittings.com/#sle).
      - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation: [www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle](http://www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle).
      - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com/#sle](http://www.tnb.com/#sle).
    2. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
    3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
    4. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless set screw and compression (gland) type fittings are not permitted.
- 2.4 INTERMEDIATE METAL CONDUIT (IMC)
- A. Manufacturers:
    1. Allied Tube & Conduit: [www.alliedeg.com/#sle](http://www.alliedeg.com/#sle).
    2. Republic Conduit: [www.republic-conduit.com/#sle](http://www.republic-conduit.com/#sle).
    3. Wheatland Tube Company: [www.wheatland.com/#sle](http://www.wheatland.com/#sle).
  - B. Description: NFPA 70, Type IMC galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.6 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 1242.
  - C. Fittings:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc: [www.bptfittings.com/#sle](http://www.bptfittings.com/#sle).
      - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation: [www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle](http://www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle).
      - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com/#sle](http://www.tnb.com/#sle).
    2. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
    3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
    4. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless set screw and compression (gland) type fittings are not permitted.
- 2.5 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (FMC)
- A. Manufacturers:
    1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc: [www.afcweb.com](http://www.afcweb.com).
    2. Electri-Flex Company: [www.electriflex.com](http://www.electriflex.com).
    3. International Metal Hose: [www.metalhose.com](http://www.metalhose.com).
  - B. Description: NFPA 70, Type FMC standard wall steel flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 1, and listed for use in classified firestop systems to be used.
  - C. Fittings:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc: [www.bptfittings.com/#sle](http://www.bptfittings.com/#sle).

- b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation: [www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle](http://www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle).
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com/#sle](http://www.tnb.com/#sle).
- 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
- 3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.

## 2.6 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC)

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc: [www.afcweb.com](http://www.afcweb.com).
  - 2. Electri-Flex Company: [www.electriflex.com](http://www.electriflex.com).
  - 3. International Metal Hose: [www.metalhose.com](http://www.metalhose.com).
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type LFMC polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacketed steel flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 360.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc: [www.bptfittings.com/#sle](http://www.bptfittings.com/#sle).
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation: [www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle](http://www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle).
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com/#sle](http://www.tnb.com/#sle).
  - 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  - 3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.

## 2.7 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit: [www.alliedeg.com](http://www.alliedeg.com).
  - 2. Republic Conduit: [www.republic-conduit.com/#sle](http://www.republic-conduit.com/#sle).
  - 3. Wheatland Tube Company: [www.wheatland.com](http://www.wheatland.com).
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type EMT steel electrical metallic tubing complying with ANSI C80.3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 797.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc: [www.bptfittings.com/#sle](http://www.bptfittings.com/#sle).
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation: [www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle](http://www.emersonindustrial.com/#sle).
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com/#sle](http://www.tnb.com/#sle).
  - 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  - 3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
  - 4. Connectors and Couplings: Use compression (gland) or set-screw type.
    - a. Do not use indenter type connectors and couplings.

## 2.8 RIGID POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) CONDUIT

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Cantex Inc: [www.cantexinc.com/#sle](http://www.cantexinc.com/#sle).
  - 2. Carlon, a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.carlon.com/#sle](http://www.carlon.com/#sle).
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type PVC rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit complying with NEMA TC 2 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; Schedule 40 unless otherwise indicated, Schedule 80 where subject to physical damage; rated for use with conductors rated 90 degrees C.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of conduit to be connected.
  - 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; material to match conduit.

## 2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Corrosion Protection Tape: PVC-based, minimum thickness of 20 mil.
- B. Conduit Joint Compound: Corrosion-resistant, electrically conductive; suitable for use with the conduit to be installed.
- C. Solvent Cement for PVC Conduit and Fittings: As recommended by manufacturer of conduit and fittings to be installed.
- D. Pull Strings: Use nylon cord with average breaking strength of not less than 200 pound-force.
- E. Sealing Compound for Sealing Fittings: Listed for use with the particular fittings to be installed.
- F. Modular Seals for Conduit Penetrations: Rated for minimum of 40 psig; Suitable for the conduits to be installed.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on drawings.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive conduits.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install conduit in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Install galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) in accordance with NECA 101.
- D. Install intermediate metal conduit (IMC) in accordance with NECA 101.
- E. Install rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit in accordance with NECA 111.
- F. Conduit Routing:
  - 1. Unless dimensioned, conduit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
  - 2. When conduit destination is indicated and routing is not shown, determine exact routing required.
  - 3. Conceal all conduits unless specifically indicated to be exposed.
  - 4. Conduits in the following areas may be exposed, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Electrical rooms.
    - b. Mechanical equipment rooms.
    - c. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
  - 5. Unless otherwise approved, do not route conduits exposed:
    - a. Across floors.
    - b. Across roofs.
    - c. Across top of parapet walls.
    - d. Across building exterior surfaces.
  - 6. Conduits installed underground or embedded in concrete may be routed in the shortest possible manner unless otherwise indicated. Route all other conduits parallel or perpendicular to building structure and surfaces, following surface contours where practical.
  - 7. Arrange conduit to maintain adequate headroom, clearances, and access.
  - 8. Arrange conduit to provide no more than the equivalent of four 90 degree bends between pull points.
  - 9. Arrange conduit to provide no more than 150 feet between pull points.
  - 10. Route conduits above water and drain piping where possible.
  - 11. Arrange conduit to prevent moisture traps. Provide drain fittings at low points and at sealing fittings where moisture may collect.
  - 12. Maintain minimum clearance of 6 inches between conduits and piping for other systems.

13. Maintain minimum clearance of 12 inches between conduits and hot surfaces. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Heaters.
    - b. Hot water piping.
    - c. Flues.
  14. Group parallel conduits in the same area together on a common rack.
- G. Conduit Support:
1. Secure and support conduits in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 26 05 29 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
  2. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
  3. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling support system. Do not provide support from ceiling grid or allow conduits to lay on ceiling tiles.
  4. Use conduit strap to support single surface-mounted conduit.
    - a. Use clamp back spacer with conduit strap for damp and wet locations to provide space between conduit and mounting surface.
  5. Use metal channel (strut) with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel surface-mounted conduits.
  6. Use conduit clamp to support single conduit from beam clamp or threaded rod.
  7. Use trapeze hangers assembled from threaded rods and metal channel (strut) with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel suspended conduits.
  8. Use of wire for support of conduits is not permitted.
- H. Connections and Terminations:
1. Use approved zinc-rich paint or conduit joint compound on field-cut threads of galvanized steel conduits prior to making connections.
  2. Where two threaded conduits must be joined and neither can be rotated, use three-piece couplings or split couplings. Do not use running threads.
  3. Use suitable adapters where required to transition from one type of conduit to another.
  4. Provide drip loops for liquidtight flexible conduit connections to prevent drainage of liquid into connectors.
  5. Terminate threaded conduits in boxes and enclosures using threaded hubs or double lock nuts for dry locations and raintight hubs for wet locations.
  6. Provide insulating bushings or insulated throats at all conduit terminations to protect conductors.
  7. Secure joints and connections to provide maximum mechanical strength and electrical continuity.
- I. Penetrations:
1. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members, including footings and grade beams, without approval of Structural Engineer.
  2. Make penetrations perpendicular to surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide sleeves for penetrations as indicated or as required to facilitate installation. Set sleeves flush with exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated or required.
  4. Conceal bends for conduit risers emerging above ground.
  5. Seal interior of conduits entering the building from underground at first accessible point to prevent entry of moisture and gases.
  6. Provide suitable modular seal where conduits penetrate exterior wall below grade.
  7. Where conduits penetrate waterproof membrane, seal as required to maintain integrity of membrane.
  8. Provide metal escutcheon plates for conduit penetrations exposed to public view.
  9. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- J. Underground Installation:

1. Minimum Cover, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
    - a. Underground, Exterior: 24 inches.
    - b. Under Slab on Grade: 12 inches to bottom of slab.
  2. Provide underground warning tape in accordance with Section 26 05 53 along entire conduit length for service entrance where not concrete-encased.
- K. Concrete Encasement: Where conduits not otherwise embedded within concrete are indicated to be concrete-encased, provide concrete in accordance with Section 03 30 00 with minimum concrete cover of 3 inches on all sides unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Conduit Movement Provisions: Where conduits are subject to movement, provide expansion and expansion/deflection fittings to prevent damage to enclosed conductors or connected equipment. This includes, but is not limited to:
1. Where conduits cross structural joints intended for expansion, contraction, or deflection.
  2. Where conduits are subject to earth movement by settlement or frost.
- M. Condensation Prevention: Where conduits cross barriers between areas of potential substantial temperature differential, provide sealing fitting or approved sealing compound at an accessible point near the penetration to prevent condensation. This includes, but is not limited to:
1. Where conduits pass from outdoors into conditioned interior spaces.
  2. Where conduits pass from unconditioned interior spaces into conditioned interior spaces.
  3. Where conduits penetrate coolers or freezers.
- N. Provide pull string in all empty conduits and in conduits where conductors and cables are to be installed by others. Leave minimum slack of 12 inches at each end.
- O. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- P. Identify conduits in accordance with Section 26 05 53.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- B. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conduits.
- 3.4 CLEANING
- A. Clean interior of conduits to remove moisture and foreign matter.
- 3.5 PROTECTION
- A. Immediately after installation of conduit, use suitable manufactured plugs to provide protection from entry of moisture and foreign material and do not remove until ready for installation of conductors.

END OF SECTION 26 05 34



## SECTION 26 05 37

### BOXES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Outlet and device boxes up to 100 cubic inches, including those used as junction and pull boxes.
- B. Cabinets and enclosures, including junction and pull boxes larger than 100 cubic inches.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 34 - Conduit:
  - 1. Conduit bodies and other fittings.
  - 2. Additional requirements for locating boxes to limit conduit length and/or number of bends between pulling points.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices:
  - 1. Wall plates.
  - 2. Floor box service fittings.
  - 3. Additional requirements for locating boxes for wiring devices.
- F. Section 27 10 00 - Structured Cabling: Additional requirements for communications systems outlet boxes.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- C. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2014.
- D. NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports; 2013.
- E. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. SCTE 77 - Specification for Underground Enclosure Integrity; 2017.
- H. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 514A - Metallic Outlet Boxes; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate minimum sizes of boxes with the actual installed arrangement of conductors, clamps, support fittings, and devices, calculated according to NFPA 70.

4. Coordinate minimum sizes of pull boxes with the actual installed arrangement of connected conduits, calculated according to NFPA 70.
5. Coordinate the placement of boxes with millwork, furniture, devices, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
6. Coordinate the work with other trades to preserve insulation integrity.
7. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted boxes where indicated.
8. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for outlet and device boxes, junction and pull boxes, cabinets and enclosures, and floor boxes.
  1. Underground Boxes/Enclosures: Include reports for load testing in accordance with SCTE 77 certified by a professional engineer or an independent testing agency upon request.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations for pull boxes, cabinets and enclosures, and floor boxes.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. Keys for Lockable Enclosures: Two of each different key.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BOXES

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Do not use boxes and associated accessories for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
  2. Provide all boxes, fittings, supports, and accessories required for a complete raceway system and to accommodate devices and equipment to be installed.
  3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
  4. Where box size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
  5. Provide grounding terminals within boxes where equipment grounding conductors terminate.
- B. Outlet and Device Boxes Up to 100 cubic inches, Including Those Used as Junction and Pull Boxes:
  1. Use sheet-steel boxes for dry locations unless otherwise indicated or required.
  2. Use cast iron boxes or cast aluminum boxes for damp or wet locations unless otherwise indicated or required; furnish with compatible weatherproof gasketed covers.
  3. Use cast iron boxes or cast aluminum boxes where exposed galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or exposed intermediate metal conduit (IMC) is used.
  4. Use suitable concrete type boxes where flush-mounted in concrete.
  5. Use suitable masonry type boxes where flush-mounted in masonry walls.
  6. Use raised covers suitable for the type of wall construction and device configuration where required.
  7. Use shallow boxes where required by the type of wall construction.
  8. Do not use "through-wall" boxes designed for access from both sides of wall.

9. Sheet-Steel Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1, and list and label as complying with UL 514A.
  10. Cast Metal Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, and list and label as complying with UL 514A; furnish with threaded hubs.
  11. Boxes for Supporting Luminaires and Ceiling Fans: Listed as suitable for the type and weight of load to be supported; furnished with fixture stud to accommodate mounting of luminaire where required.
  12. Boxes for Ganged Devices: Use multigang boxes of single-piece construction. Do not use field-connected gangable boxes.
  13. Minimum Box Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
    - a. Wiring Devices (Other Than Communications Systems Outlets): 4 inch square by 2-1/8 inch deep (100 by 54 mm) trade size.
    - b. Communications Systems Outlets: Comply with Section 27 10 00.
    - c. Ceiling Outlets: 4 inch octagonal or square by 1-1/2 inch deep (100 by 38 mm) trade size.
  14. Wall Plates: Comply with Section 26 27 26.
  15. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cooper Crouse-Hinds, a division of Eaton Corporation; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.cooperindustries.com/#sle](http://www.cooperindustries.com/#sle).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Bell Products: [www.hubbell-rtb.com](http://www.hubbell-rtb.com).
    - c. Hubbell Incorporated; RACO Products: [www.hubbell-rtb.com](http://www.hubbell-rtb.com).
    - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com](http://www.tnb.com).
- C. Cabinets and Enclosures, Including Junction and Pull Boxes Larger Than 100 cubic inches:
1. Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E, or UL 508A.
  2. NEMA 250 Environment Type, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1, painted steel.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R, painted steel.
  3. Junction and Pull Boxes Larger Than 100 cubic inches:
    - a. Provide screw-cover or hinged-cover enclosures unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Cabinets and Hinged-Cover Enclosures, Other Than Junction and Pull Boxes:
    - a. Provide lockable hinged covers, all locks keyed alike unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Back Panels: Painted steel, removable.
  5. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard grey unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cooper B-Line, a division of Eaton Corporation: [www.cooperindustries.com](http://www.cooperindustries.com).
    - b. Hoffman, a brand of Pentair Technical Products: [www.hoffmanonline.com](http://www.hoffmanonline.com).
    - c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiegmann Products: [www.hubbell-wiegmann.com](http://www.hubbell-wiegmann.com).
- D. Underground Boxes/Enclosures:
1. Description: In-ground, open bottom boxes furnished with flush, non-skid covers with legend indicating type of service and stainless steel tamper resistant cover bolts.
  2. Size: As indicated on drawings.
  3. Depth: As required to extend below frost line to prevent frost upheaval, but not less than 12 inches.
  4. Provide logo on cover to indicate type of service.
  5. Applications:
    - a. Sidewalks and Landscaped Areas Subject Only to Occasional Nondeliberate Vehicular Traffic: Use polymer concrete enclosures, with minimum SCTE 77, Tier 8 load rating.
    - b. Parking Lots, in Areas Subject Only To Occasional Nondeliberate Vehicular Traffic: Use polymer concrete enclosures, with minimum SCTE 77, Tier 15 load rating.
    - c. Do not use polymer concrete enclosures in areas subject to deliberate vehicular traffic.
  6. Polymer Concrete Underground Boxes/Enclosures: Comply with SCTE 77.
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Hubbell Incorporated; Quazite Products: [www.hubbellpowersystems.com](http://www.hubbellpowersystems.com).

- 2) Oldcastle Precast, Inc: [www.oldcastleprecast.com](http://www.oldcastleprecast.com).

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on drawings.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive boxes.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards where mounting heights are not indicated.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide separate boxes for emergency power and normal power systems.
- E. Flush-mount boxes in finished areas unless specifically indicated to be surface-mounted.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, boxes may be surface-mounted where exposed conduits are indicated or permitted.
- G. Box Locations:
  - 1. Locate boxes to be accessible. Provide access panels as required where approved by the Architect.
  - 2. Unless dimensioned, box locations indicated are approximate.
  - 3. Locate boxes as required for devices installed under other sections or by others.
    - a. Switches, Receptacles, and Other Wiring Devices: Comply with Section 26 27 26.
    - b. Communications Systems Outlets: Comply with Section 27 10 00.
  - 4. Locate boxes so that wall plates do not span different building finishes.
  - 5. Locate boxes so that wall plates do not cross masonry joints.
  - 6. Unless otherwise indicated, where multiple outlet boxes are installed at the same location at different mounting heights, install along a common vertical center line.
  - 7. Do not install flush-mounted boxes on opposite sides of walls back-to-back. Provide minimum 6 inches horizontal separation unless otherwise indicated.
  - 8. Acoustic-Rated Walls: Do not install flush-mounted boxes on opposite sides of walls back-to-back; provide minimum 24 inches horizontal separation.
  - 9. Fire Resistance Rated Walls: Install flush-mounted boxes such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.
    - a. Do not install flush-mounted boxes on opposite sides of walls back-to-back; provide minimum 24 inches separation where wall is constructed with individual noncommunicating stud cavities or protect both boxes with listed putty pads.
    - b. Do not install flush-mounted boxes with area larger than 16 square inches or such that the total aggregate area of openings exceeds 100 square inches for any 100 square feet of wall area.
  - 10. Locate junction and pull boxes as indicated, as required to facilitate installation of conductors, and to limit conduit length and/or number of bends between pulling points in accordance with Section 26 05 34.
  - 11. Locate junction and pull boxes in the following areas, unless otherwise indicated or approved by the Architect:
    - a. Concealed above accessible suspended ceilings.
    - b. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
    - c. Electrical rooms.
    - d. Mechanical equipment rooms.

- H. Box Supports:
    - 1. Secure and support boxes in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 26 05 29 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
    - 2. Provide independent support from building structure except for cast metal boxes (other than boxes used for fixture support) supported by threaded conduit connections in accordance with NFPA 70. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
    - 3. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling grid or ceiling support system.
    - 4. Use far-side support to secure flush-mounted boxes supported from single stud in hollow stud walls. Repair or replace supports for boxes that permit excessive movement.
  - I. Install boxes plumb and level.
  - J. Flush-Mounted Boxes:
    - 1. Install boxes in noncombustible materials such as concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, etc. so that front edge of box or associated raised cover is not set back from finished surface more than 1/4 inch or does not project beyond finished surface.
    - 2. Install boxes in combustible materials such as wood so that front edge of box or associated raised cover is flush with finished surface.
    - 3. Repair rough openings around boxes in noncombustible materials such as concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, etc. so that there are no gaps or open spaces greater than 1/8 inch at the edge of the box.
  - K. Install boxes as required to preserve insulation integrity.
  - L. Metallic Floor Boxes: Install box level at the proper elevation to be flush with finished floor.
  - M. Underground Boxes/Enclosures:
    - 1. Install enclosure on gravel base, minimum 6 inches deep.
    - 2. Flush-mount enclosures located in concrete or paved areas.
    - 3. Mount enclosures located in landscaped areas with top at 1 inch above finished grade.
    - 4. Install additional bracing inside enclosures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to minimize box sidewall deflections during backfilling. Backfill with cover bolted in place.
  - N. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
  - O. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
  - P. Close unused box openings.
  - Q. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no devices or equipment installed or designated for future use.
  - R. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
  - S. Identify boxes in accordance with Section 26 05 53.
- 3.3 CLEANING
- A. Clean interior of boxes to remove dirt, debris, plaster and other foreign material.
- 3.4 PROTECTION
- A. Immediately after installation, protect boxes from entry of moisture and foreign material until ready for installation of conductors.

END OF SECTION 26 05 37



## SECTION 26 05 53

### IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical identification requirements.
- B. Identification nameplates and labels.
- C. Wire and cable markers.
- D. Voltage markers.
- E. Underground warning tape.
- F. Floor marking tape.
- G. Warning signs and labels.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09 91 13 - Exterior Painting.
- B. Section 09 91 23 - Interior Painting.
- C. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Color coding for power conductors and cables 600 V and less; vinyl color coding electrical tape.
- D. Section 26 05 36 - Cable Trays for Electrical Systems: Additional identification requirements for cable tray systems.
- E. Section 27 10 00 - Structured Cabling: Identification for communications cabling and devices.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z535.2 - American National Standard for Environmental and Facility Safety Signs; 2011.
- B. ANSI Z535.4 - American National Standard for Product Safety Signs and Labels; 2011.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. UL 969 - Marking and Labeling Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify final designations for equipment, systems, and components to be identified prior to fabrication of identification products.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not conceal items to be identified, in locations such as above suspended ceilings, until identification products have been installed.
  - 2. Do not install identification products until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each product.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

##### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install adhesive products when ambient temperature is lower than recommended by manufacturer.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 IDENTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Identification for Equipment:

1. Use identification nameplate to identify each piece of electrical distribution and control equipment and associated sections, compartments, and components.
  - a. Switchgear:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
    - 4) Use identification nameplate to identify main and tie devices.
    - 5) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Do not identify spares and spaces.
  - b. Switchboards:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
    - 4) Use identification nameplate to identify main overcurrent protective device.
    - 5) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Do not identify spares and spaces.
  - c. Panelboards:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
    - 4) Identify main overcurrent protective device. Use identification label for panelboards with a door. For power distribution panelboards without a door, use identification nameplate.
    - 5) Use typewritten circuit directory to identify load(s) served for panelboards with a door. Identify spares and spaces using pencil.
    - 6) For power panelboards, use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device.
  - d. Transformers:
    - 1) Identify kVA rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase for primary and secondary.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
    - 4) Identify load(s) served. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
  - e. Enclosed switches:
    - 1) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 2) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
    - 3) Identify load(s) served. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
  - f. Time Switches:
    - 1) Identify load(s) served and associated circuits controlled. Include location.
  - g. Enclosed Contactors:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify coil voltage.
    - 4) Identify load(s) and associated circuits controlled. Include location.



2. Service Equipment:
    - a. Use identification nameplate to identify each service disconnecting means.
    - b. For buildings or structures supplied by more than one service, or any combination of branch circuits, feeders, and services, use identification nameplate or means of identification acceptable to authority having jurisdiction at each service disconnecting means to identify all other services, feeders, and branch circuits supplying that building or structure. Verify format and descriptions with authority having jurisdiction.
  3. Use identification label or handwritten text using indelible marker on inside of door at each fused switch to identify required NEMA fuse class and size.
  4. Use field-painted floor markings, floor marking tape, or warning labels to identify required equipment working clearances where indicated or where required by the authority having jurisdiction.
    - a. Field-Painted Floor Markings: Alternating black and white stripes, 3 inches wide, painted in accordance with Section 09 91 23 and 09 91 13.
  5. Use warning signs to identify electrical hazards for entrances to all rooms and other guarded locations that contain exposed live parts operating at 600 V nominal or less with the word message "DANGER; Electrical hazard; Authorized personnel only" or approved equivalent.
- B. Identification for Conductors and Cables:
1. Color Coding for Power Conductors 600 V and Less: Comply with Section 26 05 19.
  2. Identification for Communications Conductors and Cables: Comply with Section 27 10 00.
  3. Use identification nameplate or identification label to identify color code for ungrounded and grounded power conductors inside door or enclosure at each piece of feeder or branch-circuit distribution equipment when premises has feeders or branch circuits served by more than one nominal voltage system.
  4. Use wire and cable markers to identify circuit number or other designation indicated for power, control, and instrumentation conductors and cables at the following locations:
    - a. At each source and load connection.
    - b. Within boxes when more than one circuit is present.
  5. Use wire and cable markers to identify connected grounding electrode system components for grounding electrode conductors.
  6. Use underground warning tape to identify direct buried cables.
- C. Identification for Raceways:
1. Use voltage markers or color-coded bands to identify systems other than normal power system for accessible conduits at maximum intervals of 20 feet.
    - a. Color-Coded Bands: Use field-painting or vinyl color coding electrical tape to mark bands 3 inches wide.
      - 1) Color Code:
        - (a) Fire Alarm System: Red.
      - 2) Field-Painting: Comply with Section 09 91 23 and 09 91 13.
      - 3) Vinyl Color Coding Electrical Tape: Comply with Section 26 05 19.
  2. Use identification labels, handwritten text using indelible marker, or plastic marker tags to identify circuits enclosed for accessible conduits at wall penetrations, at floor penetrations, at roof penetrations, and at equipment terminations when source is not within sight.
  3. Use identification labels, handwritten text using indelible marker, or plastic marker tags to identify spare conduits at each end. Identify purpose and termination location.
  4. Use underground warning tape to identify underground raceways.
- D. Identification for Cable Tray: Comply with Section 26 05 36.
- E. Identification for Boxes:
1. Use voltage markers to identify highest voltage present.
  2. Use voltage markers or color coded boxes to identify systems other than normal power system.

- a. Color-Coded Boxes: Field-painted in accordance with Section 09 91 23 and 09 91 13 per the following color code:
      - 1) Fire Alarm System: Red.
    - b. For exposed boxes in public areas, do not color code.
  - 3. Use identification labels or handwritten text using indelible marker to identify circuits enclosed.
    - a. For exposed boxes in public areas, use only identification labels.
- F. Identification for Devices:
  - 1. Use identification label, engraved wallplate, or handwritten text using indelible marker to identify serving branch circuit for all receptacles.
    - a. For receptacles in public areas or in areas as directed by Architect, provide identification on inside surface of wallplate.
  - 2. Use identification label or engraved wallplate to identify load controlled for wall-mounted control devices controlling loads that are not visible from the control location and for multiple wall-mounted control devices installed at one location.
  - 3. Use identification label to identify receptacles protected by upstream GFI protection, where permitted.
- G. Identification for Luminaires:
  - 1. Use permanent red dot on luminaire frame to identify luminaires connected to emergency power system.

## 2.2 IDENTIFICATION NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

- A. Identification Nameplates:
  - 1. Materials:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Use plastic nameplates.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Use plastic, stainless steel, or aluminum nameplates suitable for exterior use.
  - 2. Plastic Nameplates: Two-layer or three-layer laminated acrylic or electrically non-conductive phenolic with beveled edges; minimum thickness of 1/16 inch; engraved text.
    - a. Exception: Provide minimum thickness of 1/8 inch when any dimension is greater than 4 inches.
  - 3. Stainless Steel Nameplates: Minimum thickness of 1/32 inch; engraved or laser-etched text.
  - 4. Aluminum Nameplates: Anodized; minimum thickness of 1/32 inch; engraved or laser-etched text.
  - 5. Mounting Holes for Mechanical Fasteners: Two, centered on sides for sizes up to 1 inch high; Four, located at corners for larger sizes.
- B. Identification Labels:
  - 1. Materials: Use self-adhesive laminated plastic labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant.
  - 2. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text. Do not use handwritten text unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Format for Equipment Identification:
  - 1. Minimum Size: 1 inch by 2.5 inches.
  - 2. Legend:
    - a. System designation where applicable:
      - 1) Fire Alarm System: Identify with text "FIRE ALARM".
    - b. Equipment designation or other approved description.
  - 3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Minimum Text Height:
    - a. System Designation: 1 inch.
    - b. Equipment Designation: 1/2 inch.
  - 5. Color:

- a. Normal Power System: White text on black background.
  - b. Fire Alarm System: White text on red background.
- D. Format for General Information and Operating Instructions:
  - 1. Minimum Size: 1 inch by 2.5 inches.
  - 2. Legend: Include information or instructions indicated or as required for proper and safe operation and maintenance.
  - 3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Minimum Text Height: 1/4 inch.
  - 5. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Format for Caution and Warning Messages:
  - 1. Minimum Size: 2 inches by 4 inches.
  - 2. Legend: Include information or instructions indicated or as required for proper and safe operation and maintenance.
  - 3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Minimum Text Height: 1/2 inch.
  - 5. Color: Black text on yellow background unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Format for Control Device Identification:
  - 1. Minimum Size: 3/8 inch by 1.5 inches.
  - 2. Legend: Load controlled or other designation indicated.
  - 3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Minimum Text Height: 3/16 inch.
  - 5. Color: Black text on white background.
- G. Format for Fire Alarm Device Identification:
  - 1. Minimum Size: 3/8 inch by 1.5 inches.
  - 2. Legend: Designation indicated and device zone or address.
  - 3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Minimum Text Height: 3/16 inch.
  - 5. Color: Red text on white background.

## 2.3 WIRE AND CABLE MARKERS

- A. Markers for Conductors and Cables: Use wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl cloth, wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl self-laminating, heat-shrink sleeve, plastic sleeve, plastic clip-on, or vinyl split sleeve type markers suitable for the conductor or cable to be identified.
- B. Markers for Conductor and Cable Bundles: Use plastic marker tags secured by nylon cable ties.
- C. Legend: Power source and circuit number or other designation indicated.
- D. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text, all capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Minimum Text Height: 1/8 inch.
- F. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 VOLTAGE MARKERS

- A. Markers for Conduits: Use factory pre-printed self-adhesive vinyl, self-adhesive vinyl cloth, or vinyl snap-around type markers.
- B. Markers for Boxes and Equipment Enclosures: Use factory pre-printed self-adhesive vinyl or self-adhesive vinyl cloth type markers.
- C. Minimum Size:
  - 1. Markers for Conduits: As recommended by manufacturer for conduit size to be identified.
  - 2. Markers for Pull Boxes: 1 1/8 by 4 1/2 inches.
  - 3. Markers for Junction Boxes: 1/2 by 2 1/4 inches.
- D. Legend:

1. Markers for Voltage Identification: Highest voltage present.
  2. Markers for System Identification:
- E. Color: Black text on orange background unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.5 UNDERGROUND WARNING TAPE
- A. Materials: Use non-detectable type polyethylene tape suitable for direct burial, unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. Non-detectable Type Tape: 6 inches wide, with minimum thickness of 4 mil.
  - C. Legend: Type of service, continuously repeated over full length of tape.
  - D. Color:
    1. Tape for Buried Power Lines: Black text on red background.
    2. Tape for Buried Communication, Alarm, and Signal Lines: Black text on orange background.
- 2.6 FLOOR MARKING TAPE
- A. Floor Marking Tape for Equipment Working Clearance Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl or polyester tape with overlamine, 3 inches wide, with alternating black and white stripes.
- 2.7 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS
- A. Comply with ANSI Z535.2 or ANSI Z535.4 as applicable.
  - B. Warning Signs:
    1. Materials:
      - a. Indoor Dry, Clean Locations: Use factory pre-printed rigid plastic or self-adhesive vinyl signs.
      - b. Outdoor Locations: Use factory pre-printed rigid aluminum signs.
    2. Rigid Signs: Provide four mounting holes at corners for mechanical fasteners.
    3. Minimum Size: 7 by 10 inches unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Warning Labels:
    1. Materials: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed self-adhesive polyester or self-adhesive vinyl labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant; produced using materials recognized to UL 969.
    2. Machine-Printed Labels: Use thermal transfer process printing machines and accessories recommended by label manufacturer.
    3. Minimum Size: 2 by 4 inches unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces to receive adhesive products according to manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install identification products to be plainly visible for examination, adjustment, servicing, and maintenance. Unless otherwise indicated, locate products as follows:
  1. Surface-Mounted Equipment: Enclosure front.
  2. Flush-Mounted Equipment: Enclosure front.
  3. Free-Standing Equipment: Enclosure front; also enclosure rear for equipment with rear access.
  4. Elevated Equipment: Legible from the floor or working platform.
  5. Branch Devices: Adjacent to device.
  6. Interior Components: Legible from the point of access.
  7. Conduits: Legible from the floor.
  8. Boxes: Outside face of cover.
  9. Conductors and Cables: Legible from the point of access.

10. Devices: Outside face of cover.

- C. Install identification products centered, level, and parallel with lines of item being identified.
- D. Secure nameplates to exterior surfaces of enclosures using stainless steel screws and to interior surfaces using self-adhesive backing or epoxy cement.
  - 1. Do not use adhesives on exterior surfaces except where substrate can not be penetrated.
- E. Install self-adhesive labels and markers to achieve maximum adhesion, with no bubbles or wrinkles and edges properly sealed.
- F. Install underground warning tape above buried lines with one tape per trench at 3 inches below finished grade.
- G. Secure rigid signs using stainless steel screws.
- H. Mark all handwritten text, where permitted, to be neat and legible.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace self-adhesive labels and markers that exhibit bubbles, wrinkles, curling or other signs of improper adhesion.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53



SECTION 26 09 23  
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Occupancy sensors.
- B. Time switches.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 37 - Boxes.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Devices for manual control of lighting, including wall switches, wall dimmers, and fan speed controllers.
  - 1. Includes finish requirements for wall controls specified in this section.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the placement of lighting control devices with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
  - 2. Coordinate the placement of wall switch occupancy sensors with actual installed door swings.
  - 3. Coordinate the placement of occupancy sensors with millwork, furniture, equipment or other potential obstructions to motion detection coverage installed under other sections or by others.
  - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Include ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, colors, service condition requirements, and installed features.
  - 1. Occupancy Sensors: Include detailed motion detection coverage range diagrams.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Occupancy Sensors: Provide lighting plan indicating location, model number, and orientation of each occupancy sensor and associated system component.
- D. Field Quality Control Reports.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Store products in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for all occupancy sensors.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, wiring, connectors, hardware, components, accessories, etc. as required for a complete operating system.

#### 2.2 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.hubbell.com/#sle](http://www.hubbell.com/#sle).
  - 2. WattStopper; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.wattstopper.com/#sle](http://www.wattstopper.com/#sle).
- B. All Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. Description: Factory-assembled commercial specification grade devices for indoor use capable of sensing both major motion, such as walking, and minor motion, such as small desktop level movements, according to published coverage areas, for automatic control of load indicated.
  - 2. Sensor Technology:
    - a. Passive Infrared (PIR) Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy by sensing movement of thermal energy between zones.
    - b. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy using a combination of both passive infrared and ultrasonic technologies.
  - 3. Provide LED to visually indicate motion detection with separate color LEDs for each sensor type in dual technology units.
  - 4. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, occupancy sensor to turn load on when occupant presence is detected and to turn load off when no occupant presence is detected during an adjustable turn-off delay time interval.
  - 5. Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Field configurable turn-on and hold-on activation with settings for activation by either or both sensing technologies.
  - 6. Passive Infrared Lens Field of View: Field customizable by addition of factory masking material, adjustment of integral blinders, or similar means to block motion detection in selected areas.
  - 7. Turn-Off Delay: Field adjustable, with time delay settings up to 30 minutes.
  - 8. Sensitivity: Field adjustable.
  - 9. Adaptive Technology: Field selectable; capable of self-adjusting sensitivity and time delay according to conditions.
  - 10. Load Rating for Line Voltage Occupancy Sensors: As required to control the load indicated on drawings.
- C. Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. All Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Description: Occupancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated manual control capability, and no leakage current to load in off mode.
    - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control the load indicated on drawings, provide line voltage units with self-contained relay.



- c. Operation: Field selectable to operate either as occupancy sensor (automatic on/off) or as vacancy sensor (manual-on/automatic off).
  - d. Manual-Off Override Control: When used to turn off load while in automatic-on mode, unit to revert back to automatic mode after no occupant presence is detected during the delayed-off time interval.
  - e. Finish: Color to be selected by Architect.
- D. Wall Dimmer Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. General Requirements:
    - a. Description: Occupancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated dimming control capability, and no leakage current to load in off mode.
    - b. Operation: Field selectable to operate either as occupancy sensor (automatic on/off) or as vacancy sensor (manual-on/automatic off).
    - c. Manual-Off Override Control Capability: When used to turn off load while in automatic-on mode, unit to revert back to automatic mode after no occupant presence is detected during the delayed-off time interval.
    - d. Dimmer: Slide adjustable, Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, and listed as complying with UL 1472; type and rating suitable for load controlled. Dimmers that require constant voltage are not acceptable.
    - e. Finish: Match finishes specified for wiring devices in Section 26 27 26, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. All Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Description: Low profile occupancy sensors designed for ceiling installation.
    - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control the load indicated on drawings, provide low voltage units, for use with separate compatible accessory power packs.
- F. Power Packs for Low Voltage Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. Description: Plenum rated, self-contained low voltage class 2 transformer and relay compatible with specified low voltage occupancy sensors for switching of line voltage loads.
  - 2. Provide quantity and configuration of power and slave packs with all associated wiring and accessories as required to control the load indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Input Supply Voltage: Dual rated for 120/277 V ac.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that openings for outlet boxes are neatly cut and will be completely covered by devices or wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to lighting control devices.
- F. Verify that the service voltage and ratings of lighting control devices are appropriate for the service voltage and load requirements at the location to be installed.
- G. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lighting control devices in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 37 as required for installation of lighting control devices provided under this section.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    - a. Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors: 48 inches above finished floor.
- C. Install lighting control devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, connect lighting control device grounding terminal or conductor to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- E. Install lighting control devices plumb and level, and held securely in place.
- F. Where required and not furnished with lighting control device, provide wall plate in accordance with Section 26 27 26.
- G. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- H. Where applicable, install lighting control devices and associated wall plates to fit completely flush to mounting surface with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- I. Occupancy Sensor Locations:
  - 1. Location Adjustments: Within the design intent, reasonably minor adjustments to locations may be made in order to optimize coverage and avoid conflicts or problems affecting coverage.
- J. Unless otherwise indicated, install power packs for lighting control devices above accessible ceiling or above access panel in inaccessible ceiling near the sensor location.
- K. Unless otherwise indicated, install switches on load side of power packs so that switch does not turn off power pack.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each lighting control device for damage and defects.
- C. Test occupancy sensors to verify proper operation, including time delays and ambient light thresholds where applicable. Verify optimal coverage for entire room or area. Record test results in written report to be included with submittals.
- D. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective lighting control devices.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust occupancy sensor settings to minimize undesired activations while optimizing energy savings, and to achieve desired function as indicated or as directed by Architect.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

### 3.6 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Training: Train Owner's personnel on operation, adjustment, programming, and maintenance of lighting control devices.
  - 1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.

2. Provide minimum of two hours of training.
3. Instructor: Qualified contractor familiar with the project and with sufficient knowledge of the installed lighting control devices.
4. Location: At project site.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23



SECTION 26 24 16  
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Power distribution panelboards.
- B. Lighting and appliance panelboards.
- C. Overcurrent protective devices for panelboards.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 26 43 00 - Surge Protective Devices.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NECA 407 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Panelboards; 2015.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- D. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards; 2011.
- E. NEMA PB 1.1 - General Instructions for Proper Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less; 2013.
- F. NETA ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems; 2017.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 67 - Panelboards; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted panelboards where indicated.
  - 4. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.

5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for panelboards, enclosures, overcurrent protective devices, and other installed components and accessories.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of panelboards and actual installed circuiting arrangements.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include information on replacement parts and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. Panelboard Keys: Two of each different key.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NECA 407.
- B. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- C. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to panelboard internal components, enclosure, and finish.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperature within the following limits during and after installation of panelboards:
  1. Panelboards Containing Circuit Breakers: Between 23 degrees F and 104 degrees F.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton Corporation: [www.eaton.com](http://www.eaton.com).
- B. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: [www.schneider-electric.us](http://www.schneider-electric.us).
- C. Siemens Industry, Inc: [www.usa.siemens.com](http://www.usa.siemens.com).

#### 2.2 PANELBOARDS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
  1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet.
  2. Ambient Temperature:
    - a. Panelboards Containing Circuit Breakers: Between 23 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
- C. Short Circuit Current Rating:
  1. Provide panelboards with listed short circuit current rating as indicated on the drawings.
  2. Listed series ratings are not acceptable.
- D. Panelboards Used for Service Entrance: Listed and labeled as suitable for use as service equipment according to UL 869A.
- E. Mains: Configure for top or bottom incoming feed as indicated or as required for the installation.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Replaceable without disturbing adjacent devices.

- G. Bussing: Sized in accordance with UL 67 temperature rise requirements.
  - 1. Provide fully rated neutral bus unless otherwise indicated, with a suitable lug for each feeder or branch circuit requiring a neutral connection.
  - 2. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each panelboard, with a suitable lug for each feeder and branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- H. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- I. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
  - 1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
  - 2. Boxes: Galvanized steel unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Provide wiring gutters sized to accommodate the conductors to be installed.
    - b. Increase gutter space as required where sub-feed lugs, feed-through lugs, gutter taps, or oversized lugs are provided.
  - 3. Fronts:
    - a. Fronts for Surface-Mounted Enclosures: Same dimensions as boxes.
    - b. Fronts for Flush-Mounted Enclosures: Overlap boxes on all sides to conceal rough opening.
    - c. Finish for Painted Steel Fronts: Manufacturer's standard grey unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Lockable Doors: All locks keyed alike unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Future Provisions: Prepare all unused spaces for future installation of devices including bussing, connectors, mounting hardware and all other required provisions.
- K. Surge Protective Devices: Where factory-installed, internally mounted surge protective devices are provided in accordance with Section 26 43 00, list and label panelboards as a complete assembly including surge protective device.
- L. Selectivity: Where the requirement for selectivity is indicated, furnish products as required to achieve selective coordination.
- M. Load centers are not acceptable.

## 2.3 POWER DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Description: Panelboards complying with NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type, circuit breaker type, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Conductor Terminations:
  - 1. Main and Neutral Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  - 2. Main and Neutral Lug Type: Mechanical.
- C. Bussing:
  - 1. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
  - 2. Ground Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
- D. Circuit Breakers:
  - 1. Provide bolt-on type.
  - 2. Provide thermal magnetic circuit breakers unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Enclosures:
  - 1. Provide surface-mounted enclosures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Fronts: Provide lockable hinged door with concealed hinges for access to overcurrent protective device handles without exposing live parts.
  - 3. Provide clear plastic circuit directory holder mounted on inside of door.

## 2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE PANELBOARDS

- A. Description: Panelboards complying with NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch circuit type, circuit breaker type, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Conductor Terminations:
  - 1. Main and Neutral Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  - 2. Main and Neutral Lug Type: Mechanical.
- C. Bussing:
  - 1. Phase Bus Connections: Arranged for sequential phasing of overcurrent protective devices.
  - 2. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
  - 3. Ground Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
- D. Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic bolt-on type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Enclosures:
  - 1. Provide surface-mounted or flush-mounted enclosures as indicated.
  - 2. Fronts: Provide lockable hinged door with concealed hinges for access to overcurrent protective device handles without exposing live parts.
  - 3. Provide clear plastic circuit directory holder mounted on inside of door.

## 2.5 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
  - 1. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, over center toggle, trip-free, trip-indicating circuit breakers listed and labeled as complying with UL 489; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Interrupting Capacity:
    - a. Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity as required to provide the short circuit current rating indicated, but not less than:
      - 1) 10,000 rms symmetrical amperes at 240 VAC or 208 VAC.
      - 2) 14,000 rms symmetrical amperes at 480 VAC.
    - b. Fully Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
  - 3. Conductor Terminations:
    - a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  - 4. Thermal Magnetic Circuit Breakers: For each pole, furnish thermal inverse time tripping element for overload protection and magnetic instantaneous tripping element for short circuit protection.
    - a. Provide field-adjustable magnetic instantaneous trip setting for circuit breaker frame sizes 225 amperes and larger.
  - 5. Multi-Pole Circuit Breakers: Furnish with common trip for all poles.
  - 6. Provide the following circuit breaker types where indicated:
    - a. Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Listed as complying with UL 943, class A for protection of personnel.
    - b. Ground Fault Equipment Protection Circuit Breakers: Designed to trip at 30 mA for protection of equipment.
  - 7. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
  - 8. Do not use handle ties in lieu of multi-pole circuit breakers.
  - 9. Provide the following features and accessories where indicated or where required to complete installation:
    - a. Shunt Trip: Provide coil voltage as required for connection to indicated trip actuator.
    - b. Handle Pad-Lock Provision: For locking circuit breaker handle in OFF position.



## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that the ratings and configurations of the panelboards and associated components are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive panelboards.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install panelboards securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship), NECA 407 (panelboards), and NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- E. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- F. Install panelboards plumb.
- G. Install flush-mounted panelboards so that trims fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered.
- H. Mount panelboards such that the highest position of any operating handle for circuit breakers or switches does not exceed 79 inches above the floor or working platform.
- I. Provide minimum of six spare 1 inch trade size conduits out of each flush-mounted panelboard stubbed into accessible space above ceiling.
- J. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- K. Install all field-installed branch devices, components, and accessories.
- L. Multi-Wire Branch Circuits: Group grounded and ungrounded conductors together in the panelboard as required by NFPA 70.
- M. Provide filler plates to cover unused spaces in panelboards.
- N. Provide circuit breaker lock-on devices to prevent unauthorized personnel from de-energizing essential loads where indicated. Also provide for the following:
  - 1. Fire detection and alarm circuits.
  - 2. Communications equipment circuits.
  - 3. Intrusion detection and access control system circuits.
- O. Identify panelboards in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4.
- B. Test GFCI circuit breakers to verify proper operation.
- C. Test shunt trips to verify proper operation.
- D. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective panelboards or associated components.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

B. Adjust alignment of panelboard fronts.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from panelboard enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.

B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

SECTION 26 27 17  
EQUIPMENT WIRING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical connections to equipment.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Section 26 05 34 - Conduit.
- C. Section 26 05 37 - Boxes.
- D. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices.
- E. Section 26 28 18 - Enclosed Switches.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2015).
- B. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2016.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
  - 2. Determine connection locations and requirements.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Install rough-in of electrical connections before installation of equipment is required.
  - 2. Make electrical connections before required start-up of equipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Disconnect Switches: As specified in Section 26 28 18 and in individual equipment sections.
- B. Wiring Devices: As specified in Section 26 27 26.
- C. Flexible Conduit: As specified in Section 26 05 34.
- D. Wire and Cable: As specified in Section 26 05 19.
- E. Boxes: As specified in Section 26 05 37.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

3.2 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquidtight flexible conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.
- C. Connect heat producing equipment using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered.
- D. Provide receptacle outlet to accommodate connection with attachment plug.
- E. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is required.
- F. Install suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.
- G. Install disconnect switches, controllers, control stations, and control devices to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- H. Install terminal block jumpers to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- I. Install interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment to complete equipment wiring requirements.

END OF SECTION 26 27 17

SECTION 26 27 26  
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Wall dimmers.
- C. Receptacles.
- D. Wall plates.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 37 - Boxes.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices: Devices for automatic control of lighting, including occupancy sensors.
- E. Section 27 10 05 - Structured Cabling for Voice and Data - Inside-Plant: Voice and data jacks.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- C. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2015).
- D. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2016.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 20 - General-Use Snap Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 498 - Attachment Plugs and Receptacles; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 514D - Cover Plates for Flush-Mounted Wiring Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 1310 - Class 2 Power Units; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
  - 2. Coordinate wiring device ratings and configurations with the electrical requirements of actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes for wall switches with actual installed door swings.
  - 4. Coordinate the installation and preparation of uneven surfaces, such as split face block, to provide suitable surface for installation of wiring devices.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install wiring devices until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.
  - 1. Wall Dimmers: Include derating information for ganged multiple devices.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of wiring devices.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Keys for Locking Switches: Two of each type.
  - 2. Extra Wall Plates: One of each style, size, and finish.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Store in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging until ready for installation.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Hubbell Incorporated: [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
- B. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc: [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).
- C. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc: [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us)
- D. Arrow Hart, a brand of Eaton Corp.: [www.arrowhart.com](http://www.arrowhart.com).
- E. Source Limitations: Where possible, provide products for each type of wiring device produced by a single manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.

#### 2.2 WIRING DEVICE APPLICATIONS

- A. Provide wiring devices suitable for intended use and with ratings adequate for load served.
- B. For single receptacles installed on an individual branch circuit, provide receptacle with ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit.
- C. Provide weather resistant GFCI receptacles with specified weatherproof covers for receptacles installed outdoors or in damp or wet locations.
- D. Provide tamper resistant receptacles throughout where installed below 6' AFF.
- E. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles installed within 6 feet of sinks.

#### 2.3 WIRING DEVICE FINISHES

- A. All coverplates in finished spaces shall be stainless steel.
- B. Wiring devices in finished spaces shall be provided in color selected by Architect, from manufacturer's full line.
- C. Wiring Devices Installed in Unfinished Spaces: Gray with galvanized steel wall plate.

#### 2.4 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Wall Switches - General Requirements: AC only, quiet operating, general-use snap switches with silver alloy contacts, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 20; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring and screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.

- B. Standard Wall Switches: Commercial specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Locking Wall Switches: Commercial specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with lever type keyed switch actuator and maintained contacts; switches keyed alike; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.

## 2.5 RECEPTACLES

- A. Receptacles - General Requirements: Self-grounding, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 498; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring or screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
  - 2. NEMA configurations specified are according to NEMA WD 6.
- B. Convenience Receptacles:
  - 1. Standard Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 3. Tamper Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 4. Tamper Resistant and Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type and as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
- C. GFCI Receptacles:
  - 1. GFCI Receptacles - General Requirements: Self-testing, with feed-through protection and light to indicate ground fault tripped condition and loss of protection; listed as complying with UL 943, class A.
  - 2. Standard GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.
  - 3. Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.
  - 4. Tamper Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type.
  - 5. Tamper Resistant and Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type and as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.
- D. USB Charging Devices:
  - 1. USB Charging Devices - General Requirements: Listed as complying with UL 1310.
    - a. Charging Capacity - Two-Port Devices: 2.1 A, minimum.
  - 2. USB Charging/Tamper Resistant Receptacle Combination Devices: Two-port (Type A) USB charging device and receptacle, commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type; rectangular decorator style.

## 2.6 WALL PLATES

- A. Wall Plates: Comply with UL 514D.
  - 1. Configuration: One piece cover as required for quantity and types of corresponding wiring devices.

2. Size: Standard.
  3. Screws: Metal with slotted heads finished to match wall plate finish.
- B. Stainless Steel Wall Plates: Brushed satin finish, Type 302 stainless steel.
  - C. Galvanized Steel Wall Plates: Rounded corners and edges, with corrosion resistant screws.
  - D. Weatherproof Covers for Wet Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with hinged lockable cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations while in use with attachment plugs connected and identified as extra-duty type.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.
- F. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 and, where applicable, NECA 130.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 37 as required for installation of wiring devices provided under this section.
  1. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    - a. Wall Switches: 48 inches above finished floor.
    - b. Wall Dimmers: 48 inches above finished floor.
    - c. Receptacles: 18 inches above finished floor or 6 inches above counter.
  2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Where multiple receptacles or wall switches are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.
  4. Locate wall switches on strike side of door with edge of wall plate 3 inches from edge of door frame. Where locations are indicated otherwise, notify Architect to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
  5. Locate receptacles for electric drinking fountains concealed behind drinking fountain according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install wiring devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
- E. Where required, connect wiring devices using pigtails not less than 6 inches long. Do not connect more than one conductor to wiring device terminals.
- F. Connect wiring devices by wrapping conductor clockwise 3/4 turn around screw terminal and tightening to proper torque specified by the manufacturer. Where present, do not use push-in pressure terminals that do not rely on screw-actuated binding.



- G. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- H. Provide GFCI receptacles with integral GFCI protection at each location indicated. Do not use feed-through wiring to protect downstream devices.
- I. Install wiring devices plumb and level with mounting yoke held rigidly in place.
- J. Install wall switches with OFF position down.
- K. Install wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified and indicated after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
- L. Install vertically mounted receptacles with grounding pole on bottom and horizontally mounted receptacles with grounding pole on left.
- M. Install wall plates to fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- N. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no wiring devices installed or designated for future use.
- O. Identify wiring devices in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each wiring device for damage and defects.
- B. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized to verify proper operation.
- C. Test each receptacle to verify operation and proper polarity.
- D. Test each GFCI receptacle for proper tripping operation according to manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective wiring devices.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust coverplate screws to be uniformly horizontal or vertical.
- C. Adjust presets for wall dimmers according to manufacturer's instructions as directed by Architect.

#### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 26 07 26



SECTION 26 28 18  
ENCLOSED SWITCHES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Enclosed safety switches.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- C. NEMA KS 1 - Heavy Duty Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches (600 Volts Maximum); 2013.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades. Avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and within working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
  - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for enclosed switches and other installed components and accessories.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of enclosed switches.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include information on replacement parts and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- B. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to enclosed switch internal components, enclosure, and finish.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperature between -22 degrees F and 104 degrees F during and after installation of enclosed switches.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton Corporation: [www.eaton.com](http://www.eaton.com).
- B. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: [www.schneider-electric.us](http://www.schneider-electric.us).
- C. Source Limitations: Furnish enclosed switches and associated components produced by the same manufacturer as the other electrical distribution equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

### 2.2 ENCLOSED SAFETY SWITCHES

- A. Description: Quick-make, quick-break enclosed safety switches listed and labeled as complying with UL 98; heavy duty; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
  - 1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet.
  - 2. Ambient Temperature: Between -22 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
- D. Horsepower Rating: Suitable for connected load.
- E. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- F. Provide with switch blade contact position that is visible when the cover is open.
- G. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- H. Provide insulated, groundable fully rated solid neutral assembly where a neutral connection is required, with a suitable lug for terminating each neutral conductor.
- I. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each enclosed safety switch, with a suitable lug for terminating each equipment grounding conductor.
- J. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
  - 1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
  - 2. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard, factory applied grey unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening the cover with the switch in the ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.
- L. Heavy Duty Switches:
  - 1. Comply with NEMA KS 1.
  - 2. Conductor Terminations:
    - a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.

3. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position, capable of accepting three padlocks.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that the ratings of the enclosed switches are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive enclosed safety switches.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install enclosed switches in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install enclosed switches securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install enclosed switches plumb.
- F. Except where indicated to be mounted adjacent to the equipment they supply, mount enclosed switches such that the highest position of the operating handle does not exceed 79 inches above the floor or working platform.
- G. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from switch enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 26 28 18



SECTION 26 43 00  
SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surge protective devices for branch panelboard locations.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 24 16 - Panelboards.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. SPD: Surge Protective Device.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. UL 1449 - Standard for Surge Protective Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate size and location of overcurrent device compatible with the actual surge protective device and location to be installed. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to ordering equipment.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Include detailed component information, voltage, surge current ratings, repetitive surge current capacity, voltage protection rating (VPR) for all protection modes, maximum continuous operating voltage (MCOV), nominal discharge current (I-n), short circuit current rating (SCCR), connection means including any required external overcurrent protection, enclosure ratings, outline and support point dimensions, weight, service condition requirements, and installed features.
- C. Certificates: Manufacturer's documentation of listing for compliance with the following standards:
  - 1. UL 1449.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include information on status indicators and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- E. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty and documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide minimum five year warranty covering repair or replacement of surge protective devices showing evidence of failure due to defective materials or workmanship.

- B. Exclude surge protective devices from any clause limiting warranty responsibility for acts of nature, including lightning, stated elsewhere.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Field-installed, Externally Mounted Surge Protective Devices:
  - 1. ABB/GE: [www.geindustrial.com/#sle](http://www.geindustrial.com/#sle).
  - 2. Advanced Protection Technologies, Inc (APT): [www.aptsurge.com/#sle](http://www.aptsurge.com/#sle).
  - 3. Current Technology; a brand of Thomas & Betts Power Solutions: [www.tnbpowersolutions.com/#sle](http://www.tnbpowersolutions.com/#sle).
  - 4. Schneider Electric; Square D Brand Surgelogic Products: [www.surgelogic.com/#sle](http://www.surgelogic.com/#sle).
  - 5. Surge Suppression, LLC (SSI): [www.surgesuppression.com/#sle](http://www.surgesuppression.com/#sle).
- B. Factory-installed, Internally Mounted Surge Protective Devices:
  - 1. Same as manufacturer of equipment containing surge protective device, to provide a complete listed assembly including SPD.
- C. Source Limitations: Furnish surge protective devices produced by a single manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.

### 2.2 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled surge protective devices (SPDs) for 60 Hz service; listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended; system voltage as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide factory-installed, internally-mounted SPDs.
- C. Protected Modes:
  - 1. Single Split Phase Systems: L-N, L-G, N-G, L-L.
- D. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Ratings (VPRs):
  - 1. 208Y/120V System Voltage: Not more than 1,000 V for L-N, L-G, and N-G modes and 1,200 V for L-L mode.
- E. UL 1449 Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV): Not less than 115% of nominal system voltage.
- F. Enclosure Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
  - 1. Indoor clean, dry locations: Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor locations: Type 3R.
- G. Equipment Containing Factory-installed, Internally Mounted SPDs: Listed and labeled as a complete assembly including SPD.
  - 1. Panelboards: See Section 26 24 16.

### 2.3 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR BRANCH PANELBOARD LOCATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, provide field-installed, externally mounted or factory-installed, internally mounted SPDs.
- B. List and label as complying with UL 1449, Type 1 or Type 2.
- C. Provide SPDs utilizing field-replaceable modular or non-modular protection circuits.
- D. Surge Current Rating: Not less than 60 kA per mode/120 kA per phase.
- E. UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I-n): 20 kA.
- F. UL 1449 Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR): Not less than the short circuit current rating of the equipment the SPD is connected to, including any series ratings.
- G. Diagnostics:
  - 1. Protection Status Monitoring: Provide indicator lights to report the protection status.



2. Alarm Notification: Provide indicator light and audible alarm to report alarm condition. Provide button to manually silence audible alarm.
  3. Remote Status Monitoring: Provide Form C dry type contacts (normally open and normally closed) for remote annunciation of status.
  4. Surge Counter: Provide surge event counter with manual reset button, surge count retention upon power loss, and six digit LCD display that indicates quantity of surge events.
- H. Provide surge rated integral disconnect switch for SPDs not connected to a dedicated circuit breaker or fused switch or not direct bus connected.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that the service voltage and configuration marked on the SPD are consistent with the service voltage and configuration at the location to be installed.
- C. Verify that electrical equipment is ready to accept connection of the SPD and that installed overcurrent device is consistent with requirements of drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Verify system grounding and bonding is in accordance with Section 26 05 26, including bonding of neutral and ground for service entrance and separately derived systems where applicable. Do not energize SPD until deficiencies have been corrected.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Unless indicated otherwise, connect service entrance surge protective device on load side of service disconnect main overcurrent device.
- E. Provide conductors with minimum ampacity as indicated on the drawings, as required by NFPA 70, and not less than manufacturer's recommended minimum conductor size.
- F. Install conductors between SPD and equipment terminations as short and straight as possible, not exceeding manufacturer's recommended maximum conductor length. Breaker locations may be reasonably rearranged in order to provide leads as short and straight as possible. Twist conductors together to reduce inductance.
- G. Do not energize SPD until bonding of neutral and ground for service entrance and separately derived systems is complete in accordance with Section 26 05 26 where applicable. Replace SPDs damaged by improper or missing neutral-ground bond.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Procure services of a qualified manufacturer's representative to observe installation and assist in inspection, testing, and adjusting. Include manufacturer's reports with field quality control submittals.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 26 43 00



SECTION 26 51 00  
INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior luminaires.
- B. Exit signs.
- C. Ballasts and drivers.
- D. Luminaire accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 26 05 37 - Boxes.
- B. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- C. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices: Automatic controls for lighting including occupancy sensors.
- D. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Manual wall switches and wall dimmers.
- E. Section 26 56 00 - Exterior Lighting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IESNA LM-63 - ANSI Approved Standard File Format for Electronic Transfer of Photometric Data and Related Information; 2002 (Reaffirmed 2008).
- B. IES LM-79 - Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products; Illuminating Engineering Society; 2008.
- C. IES LM-80 - Approved Method: Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules; 2015, with Errata (2017).
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- E. NECA/IESNA 500 - Standard for Installing Indoor Commercial Lighting Systems; 2006.
- F. NECA/IESNA 502 - Standard for Installing Industrial Lighting Systems; 2006.
- G. NEMA LE 4 - Recessed Luminaires, Ceiling Compatibility; 2012.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. UL 924 - Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of luminaires with mounting surfaces installed under other sections or by others. Coordinate the work with placement of supports, anchors, etc. required for mounting. Coordinate compatibility of luminaires and associated trims with mounting surfaces at installed locations.
  - 2. Coordinate the placement of luminaires with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, diffusers, fire suppression system components, and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.

3. Coordinate the placement of exit signs with furniture, equipment, signage or other potential obstructions to visibility installed under other sections or by others.
4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, installed accessories, and ceiling compatibility; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with all proposed features.
  1. LED Luminaires:
    - a. Include estimated useful life, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
    - b. Include IES LM-79 test report upon request.
  2. Provide electronic files of photometric data certified by a National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) lab or independent testing agency in IESNA LM-63 standard format upon request.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Instructions for each product including information on replacement parts.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of luminaires and any associated remote components.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Receive, handle, and store products according to NECA/IESNA 500 (commercial lighting) and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Keep products in original manufacturer's packaging and protect from damage until ready for installation.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for all LED luminaires, including drivers.
- B. Provide five year pro-rata warranty for batteries for emergency lighting units.
- C. Provide ten year pro-rata warranty for batteries for self-powered exit signs.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.

#### 2.2 LUMINAIRES

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- C. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.

- D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- E. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- F. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- G. Recessed Luminaires:
  - 1. Ceiling Compatibility: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
- H. LED Luminaires:
  - 1. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.
  - 2. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
  - 3. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
- I. Luminaires Mounted in Continuous Rows: Provide quantity of units required for length indicated, with all accessories required for joining and aligning.

## 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Description: Internally illuminated exit signs with LEDs unless otherwise indicated; complying with NFPA 101 and all applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
  - 1. Number of Faces: Single or double as indicated or as required for the installed location.
  - 2. Directional Arrows: As indicated or as required for the installed location.
- B. Self-Powered Exit Signs:
  - 1. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source or brownout condition exceeding 20 percent voltage drop from nominal, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamps to integral battery power for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
  - 2. Battery: Sealed maintenance-free nickel cadmium unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Diagnostics: Provide power status indicator light and accessible integral test switch to manually activate emergency operation.
  - 4. Provide low-voltage disconnect to prevent battery damage from deep discharge.
  - 5. Self-Diagnostics: Provide units that self-monitor functionality and automatically perform testing required by NFPA 101 where indicated; provide indicator light(s) to report test and diagnostic status.

## 2.4 BALLASTS AND DRIVERS

- A. Ballasts/Drivers - General Requirements:
  - 1. Provide ballasts containing no polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs).
  - 2. Minimum Efficiency/Efficacy: Provide ballasts complying with all current applicable federal and state ballast efficiency/efficacy standards.
- B. Dimmable LED Drivers:
  - 1. Dimming Range: Continuous dimming from 100 percent to 10 percent relative light output unless dimming capability to lower level is indicated, without flicker.
  - 2. Control Compatibility: Fully compatible with the dimming controls to be installed.
    - a. Wall Dimmers: See Section 26 27 26.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Stems for Suspended Luminaires: Steel tubing, minimum 1/2" size, factory finished to match luminaire or field-painted as directed.

- B. Threaded Rods for Suspended Luminaires: Zinc-plated steel, minimum 1/4" size, field-painted as directed.
- C. Provide accessory plaster frames for luminaires recessed in plaster ceilings.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that suitable support frames are installed where required.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to luminaires.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 37 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Install products according to manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install luminaires securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1 (general workmanship), NECA 500 (commercial lighting), and NECA 502 (industrial lighting).
- E. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
- F. Suspended Ceiling Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Do not use ceiling tiles to bear weight of luminaires.
  - 2. Do not use ceiling support system to bear weight of luminaires unless ceiling support system is certified as suitable to do so.
  - 3. Secure surface-mounted and recessed luminaires to ceiling support channels or framing members or to building structure.
  - 4. Secure pendant-mounted luminaires to building structure.
  - 5. Secure lay-in luminaires to ceiling support channels using listed safety clips at four corners.
  - 6. In addition to ceiling support wires, provide two galvanized steel safety wire(s), minimum 12 gage, connected from opposing corners of each recessed luminaire to building structure.
  - 7. See appropriate Division 9 section where suspended grid ceiling is specified for additional requirements.
- G. Recessed Luminaires:
  - 1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
  - 2. Non-IC Rated Luminaires: Maintain required separation from insulation and combustible materials according to listing.
- H. Suspended Luminaires:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to bottom of luminaire.
  - 2. Install using the suspension method indicated, with support lengths and accessories as required for specified mounting height.
  - 3. Install canopies tight to mounting surface.

- I. Wall-Mounted Luminaires: Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to center of luminaire.
- J. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- K. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- L. Exit Signs:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal lighting in same room or area. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each product for damage and defects.
- B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection to verify proper operation.
- C. Test self-powered exit signs to verify proper operation upon loss of normal power supply.
- D. Correct wiring deficiencies and repair or replace damaged or defective products. Repair or replace excessively noisy ballasts as determined by Architect.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Aim and position adjustable luminaires to achieve desired illumination as indicated or as directed by Architect. Secure locking fittings in place.
- B. Exit Signs with Field-Selectable Directional Arrows: Set as indicated or as required to properly designate egress path as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.

#### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces according to NECA 500 (commercial lighting), NECA 502 (industrial lighting), and manufacturer's instructions to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.

#### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed luminaires from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION 26 51 00





SECTION 26 56 00  
EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior luminaires.
- B. Poles and accessories.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code; 2017.
- B. IES LM-79 - Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products; 2008.
- C. IES LM-80 - Approved Method: Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules; 2015, with Errata (2017).
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- E. NECA/IESNA 501 - Standard for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems; 2006.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, weight, effective projected area (EPA), and installed accessories; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with all proposed features.
  - 1. LED Luminaires:
    - a. Include estimated useful life, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, handle, and store products according to NECA/IESNA 501 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Keep products in original manufacturer's packaging and protect from damage until ready for installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.

## 2.2 LUMINAIRES

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- C. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- E. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- F. Provide luminaires listed and labeled as suitable for wet locations unless otherwise indicated.
- G. LED Luminaires:
  - 1. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.
  - 2. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
  - 3. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.

## 2.3 POLES

- A. All Poles:
  - 1. Provide poles and associated support components suitable for the luminaire(s) and associated supports and accessories to be installed.
  - 2. Structural Design Criteria:
    - a. Wind Load: Include effective projected area (EPA) of luminaire(s) and associated supports and accessories to be installed.
      - 1) Design Wind Speed: 100 miles per hour, with gust factor of 1.3.
    - b. Vibration control: Provide dampers as required to prevent pole harmonic vibrations.
  - 3. Material: Steel, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Shape: Round straight, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Finish: Match luminaire finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Mounting: Install on concrete foundation, height as indicated on the drawings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Unless otherwise indicated, provide with the following features/accessories:
    - a. Handhole.
    - b. Anchor bolts with leveling nuts or leveling shims.
    - c. Anchor base cover.
- B. Metal Poles: Provide ground lug, accessible from handhole or transformer base.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that suitable support frames are installed where required.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to luminaires.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 37 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.

- B. Install products according to manufacturer's instructions.
  - C. Install luminaires securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1 (general workmanship) and NECA/IESNA 501 (exterior lighting).
  - D. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
  - E. Recessed Luminaires:
    - 1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
    - 2. Non-IC Rated Luminaires: Maintain required separation from insulation and combustible materials according to listing.
    - 3. Luminaires Recessed in Fire-Rated Ceilings: Install using accessories and firestopping materials to meet regulatory requirements for fire rating.
  - F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires: Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to center of luminaire.
  - G. Pole-Mounted Luminaires:
    - 1. Maintain the following minimum clearances:
      - a. Comply with IEEE C2.
      - b. Comply with utility company requirements.
    - 2. Foundation-Mounted Poles:
      - a. Provide cast-in-place concrete foundations for poles as indicated, in accordance with Section 03 30 00.
        - 1) Install anchor bolts plumb per template furnished by pole manufacturer.
        - 2) Position conduits to enter pole shaft.
      - b. Install foundations plumb.
      - c. Install poles plumb, using leveling nuts or shims as required to adjust to plumb.
      - d. Tighten anchor bolt nuts to manufacturer's recommended torque.
      - e. Install non-shrink grout between pole anchor base and concrete foundation, leaving small channel for condensation drainage.
      - f. Install anchor base covers or anchor bolt covers as indicated.
    - 3. Grounding:
      - a. Bond luminaires, metal accessories, metal poles, and foundation reinforcement to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
    - 4. Install separate service conductors, 12 AWG copper, from each luminaire down to handhole for connection to branch circuit conductors.
  - H. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
  - I. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Inspect each product for damage and defects.
  - B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection to verify proper operation.
  - C. Correct wiring deficiencies and repair or replace damaged or defective products. Repair or replace excessively noisy ballasts as determined by Architect.
- 3.4 CLEANING
- A. Clean surfaces according to NECA/IESNA 501 and manufacturer's instructions to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.
- 3.5 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed luminaires from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION 26 56 00

